



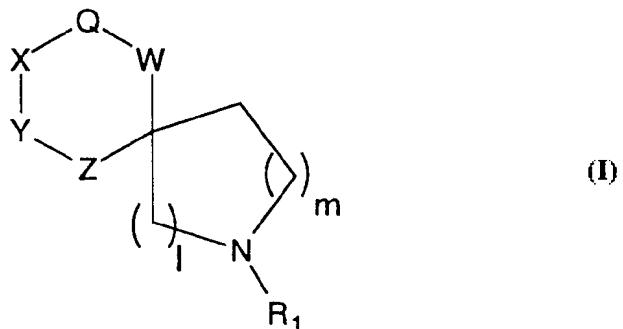
## INTERNATIONAL APPLICATION PUBLISHED UNDER THE PATENT COOPERATION TREATY (PCT)

(51) International Patent Classification 5 :		A1	(11) International Publication Number: <b>WO 94/29309</b>
C07D 471/10, 495/10, A61K 31/435, C07D 491/10, 513/10, A61K 31/54, C07D 487/10, A61K 31/40, 31/425, C07D 471/20, 513/20, 491/20, 495/20 // (C07D 471/10, 221:00, 209:00) (C07D 471/10, 221:00, 221:00) (C07D 495/10, 333:00, 221:00) (C07D 491/10, 307:00, 221:00)			(43) International Publication Date: 22 December 1994 (22.12.94)
(21) International Application Number: PCT/US94/05545			
(22) International Filing Date: 17 May 1994 (17.05.94)			
(30) Priority Data: 072,904 7 June 1993 (07.06.93) US		bridge, NJ 07095 (US). SHAH, Shrenik, K. [IN/US]; 25 Denice Court, Metuchen, NJ 08840 (US). CHIANG, Yuan-Ching, P. [US/US]; 17 Burnham Court, Scotch Plains, NJ 07076 (US). DUNN, Patrick, T. [US/US]; 614 Sharon Gardens, Woodbridge, NJ 07095 (US). KOYAMA, Hiroo [JP/US]; Apartment 14C, 800 Forest Avenue, Westfield, NJ 07090 (US). FINKE, Paul, E. [US/US]; 34 Inwood Drive, Milltown, NJ 08850 (US). QI, Hongbo [CN/US]; 3 Watson Court West, Edison, NJ 08820 (US). ROBICHAUD, Albert, J. [US/US]; 223 High Street, Stirling, NJ 07980 (US).	
(60) Parent Application or Grant (63) Related by Continuation US Filed on 072,904 (CIP) 7 June 1993 (07.06.93)		(74) Common Representative: MERCK & CO., INC.; Patent Department, 126 East Lincoln Avenue, Rahway, NJ 07065 (US).	
(71) Applicant (for all designated States except US): MERCK & CO., INC. [US/US]; 126 East Lincoln Avenue, Rahway, NJ 07065 (US).		(81) Designated States: AU, BB, BG, BR, BY, CA, CN, CZ, FI, HU, JP, KR, KZ, LK, LV, MG, MN, MW, NO, NZ, PL, RO, RU, SD, SI, SK, TT, UA, US, UZ, European patent (AT, BE, CH, DE, DK, ES, FR, GB, GR, IE, IT, LU, MC, NL, PT, SE), OAPI patent (BF, BJ, CF, CG, CI, CM, GA, GN, ML, MR, NE, SN, TD, TG).	
(72) Inventors; and (75) Inventors/Applicants (for US only): MacCOSS, Malcolm [GB/US]; 48 Rose Court, Freehold, NJ 07728 (US). MILLS, Sander, G. [US/US]; 13A Woodbridge Terrace, Wood-		<p><b>Published</b>  <i>With international search report.  Before the expiration of the time limit for amending the claims and to be republished in the event of the receipt of amendments.</i></p>	

(54) Title: SPIRO-SUBSTITUTED AZACYCLES AS NEUROKININ ANTAGONISTS

## (57) Abstract

Disclosed are spiro-substituted azacycles of formula (I), tachykinin receptor antagonists useful in the treatment of inflammatory diseases, pain or migraine, and asthma. In particular compounds of formula (I) are shown to be neurokinin antagonists.



**FOR THE PURPOSES OF INFORMATION ONLY**

Codes used to identify States party to the PCT on the front pages of pamphlets publishing international applications under the PCT.

AT	Austria	GB	United Kingdom	MR	Mauritania
AU	Australia	GE	Georgia	MW	Malawi
BB	Barbados	GN	Guinea	NE	Niger
BE	Belgium	GR	Greece	NL	Netherlands
BF	Burkina Faso	HU	Hungary	NO	Norway
BG	Bulgaria	IE	Ireland	NZ	New Zealand
BJ	Benin	IT	Italy	PL	Poland
BR	Brazil	JP	Japan	PT	Portugal
BY	Belarus	KE	Kenya	RO	Romania
CA	Canada	KG	Kyrgyzstan	RU	Russian Federation
CF	Central African Republic	KP	Democratic People's Republic of Korea	SD	Sudan
CG	Congo	KR	Republic of Korea	SE	Sweden
CH	Switzerland	KZ	Kazakhstan	SI	Slovenia
CI	Côte d'Ivoire	LI	Liechtenstein	SK	Slovakia
CM	Cameroon	LK	Sri Lanka	SN	Senegal
CN	China	LU	Luxembourg	TD	Chad
CS	Czechoslovakia	LV	Latvia	TG	Togo
CZ	Czech Republic	MC	Monaco	TJ	Tajikistan
DE	Germany	MD	Republic of Moldova	TT	Trinidad and Tobago
DK	Denmark	MG	Madagascar	UA	Ukraine
ES	Spain	ML	Mali	US	United States of America
FI	Finland	MN	Mongolia	UZ	Uzbekistan
FR	France			VN	Viet Nam
GA	Gabon				

- 1 -

TITLE OF THE INVENTION

SPIRO-SUBSTITUTED AZACYCLES AS NEUROKININ  
ANTAGONISTS

5 BACKGROUND OF THE INVENTION

The invention disclosed herein is directed to certain spiro-substituted azacycles useful as tachykinin receptor antagonists. In particular, the compounds disclosed herein are neurokinin receptor antagonists.

10 The tachykinins, substance P (SP), neurokinin A (NKA) and neurokinin B (NKB), are structurally similar members of a family of neuropeptides. Each of these is an agonist of the receptor types, neurokinin-1 receptor (NK-1), neuorokinin-2 receptor (NK-2) and neuorokinin-3 receptor (NK-3), which are so defined according to their 15 relative abilities to bind tachykinins with high affinity and to be activated by the natural agonists SP, NKA and NKB respectively.

15 The tachykinins are distinguished by a conserved carboxyl-terminal sequence Phe-X-Gly-Leu-Met-NH<sub>2</sub>. More specifically, substance P is a pharmacologically-active neuropeptide that is produced 20 in mammals and possesses a characteristic amino acid sequence:

Arg-Pro-Lys-Pro-Gln-Gln-Phe-Phe-Gly-Leu-Met-NH<sub>2</sub>

25 Neurokinin A possesses the following amino acid sequence:  
His-Lys-Thr-Asp-Ser-Phe-Val-Gly-Leu-Met-NH<sub>2</sub>.

30 Neurokinin B possesses the following amino acid sequence:  
Asp-Met-His-Asp-Phe-Phe-Val-Gly-Leu-Met-NH<sub>2</sub>.

(Chang *et al.*, Nature New Biol. 232, 86 (1971); D.F. Veber *et al.*, U.S. Patent No. 4,680,283).

- 2 -

5        The neurokinin receptors are widely distributed throughout the mammalian nervous system (especially brain and spinal ganglia), the circulatory system and peripheral tissues (especially the duodenum and jejunum) and are involved in regulating a number of diverse biological processes. This includes sensory perception of olfaction, vision, audition and pain, movement control, gastric motility, vasodilation, salivation, and micturition (B. Pernow, *Pharmacol. Rev.*, 1983, 35, 85-141). The NK1 and NK2 receptor subtypes are implicated in synaptic transmission (Laneuville *et al.*, *Life Sci.*, 42: 1295-1305 (1988)).

10       Substance P acts as a vasodilator, a depressant, stimulates salivation and produces increased capillary permeability. It is also capable of producing both analgesia and hyperalgesia in animals, depending on dose and pain responsiveness of the animal (see R.C.A. Frederickson *et al.*, *Science*, 199, 1359 (1978); P. Oehme *et al.*, *Science*, 208, 305 (1980)) and plays a role in sensory transmission and pain perception (T.M. Jessell, *Advan. Biochem. Psychopharmacol.* 28, 189 (1981)). In particular, substance P has been shown to be involved in the transmission of pain in migraine (see B.E.B. Sandberg *et al.*, *Journal of Medicinal Chemistry*, 25, 1009 (1982)), and in arthritis (Levine *et al.* *Science*, (1984) 226, 547-549).

15       In the airways, it has been indicated that NK1 receptors are associated with microvascular leakage and mucus secretion, while NK2 receptors regulate smooth muscle contraction. Also, it has been shown that both substance P and neurokinin A are effective in inducing airway constriction and edema. Based on such findings, it is believed that substance P and neurokinin A may be involved in the pathogenesis of neurogenic inflammation, including allergic diseases such as asthma. (Frossard *et al.*, *Life Sci.*, 49, 1941-1953 (1991); Advenier, *et al.*, *Biochem. Biophys. Res. Comm.*, 184(3), 1418-1424 (1992)).

20       In experimental studies, sensory neuropeptides, especially tachykinins such as substance P and neurokinin A, can bring about many of the pathophysiological features of asthma. Neurokinin A is a very potent constrictor of human airways *in vitro*, and substance P causes mucus secretion in the airways. (Barnes P.J., *Lancet*, pp 242-44 (1986);

- 3 -

Rogers D.R., Aursudkij B., Barnes P.J., *Euro. J. Pharmacol.*, 174, 283-86 (1989)).

5 Inhalation of bradykinin causes bronchoconstriction in asthmatic patients but not in normal subjects. (Fuller R.W., Dixon C.M.S., Cuss F.M.C., Barnes P.J., *Am Rev Respir Dis*, 135, 176-80 (1987)). Since the bradykinin-induced bronchoconstriction is partly opposed by anticholinergic agents and since bradykinin is only a weak constrictor of human airways *in vitro*, it has been suggested that the bronchoconstrictor response is partly mediated by a neural reflex.

10 Bradykinin stimulates vagal afferent C fibers and causes bronchoconstriction in dogs. (Kaufman M.P., Coleridge H.M., Coleridge J.C.G., Baker D.G., *J. Appl. Physio.*, 48, 511-17 (1980)). In guinea-pig airways, bradykinin causes a bronchoconstrictor response by way of cholinergic and sensory-nerve-mediated mechanisms. (Ichinoe M., Belvisi M.G., Barnes P.J., *J. Pharmacol. Exp. Ther.*, 253, 594-99 (1990)). Bradykinin-induced bronchoconstriction in human airways may therefore be due partly to tachykinin released from sensory nerve terminals via axon reflex mechanisms. Clinical trials have shown that a dual NK-1/NK-2 antagonist (such as FK-224) protects against

15 20 bradykinin induced bronchoconstriction in asthmatic patients. (Ichinoe, M. *et al.*, *Lancet*, , vol. 340, pp 1248-1251 (1992)).

The tachykinins have also been implicated in gastro-intestinal (GI) disorders and diseases of the GI tract, such as inflammatory bowel disease, ulcerative colitis and Crohn's disease, etc. (see Mantyh *et al.*, *Neuroscience*, 25 (3), 817-37 (1988) and D. Regoli in "Trends in Cluster Headache" Ed. F. Sicutelli *et al.*, Elsevier Scientific Publishers, Amsterdam, 1987, pp. 85-95).

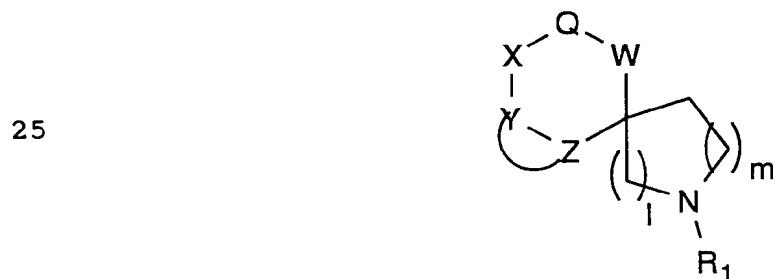
25 30 It is also hypothesized that there is a neurogenic mechanism for arthritis in which substance P may play a role (Kidd *et al.*, "A Neurogenic Mechanism for Symmetric Arthritis" in *The Lancet*, 11 November 1989 and Gronblad *et al.*, "Neuropeptides in Synovium of Patients with Rheumatoid Arthritis and Osteoarthritis" in *J. Rheumatol.* (1988) 15(12) 1807-10). Therefore, substance P is believed to be involved in the inflammatory response in diseases such as rheumatoid

- 4 -

arthritis and osteoarthritis (O'Byrne *et al.*, in *Arthritis and Rheumatism* (1990) 33, 1023-8). Other disease areas where tachykinin antagonists are believed to be useful are allergic conditions (Hamelet *et al.*, *Can. J. Pharmacol. Physiol.* (1988) 66, 1361-7), immunoregulation (Lotz *et al.*, *Science* (1988) 241, 1218-21, Kimball *et al.*, *J. Immunol.* (1988) 141 (10) 3564-9 and A. Perianin, *et al.*, *Biochem. Biophys. Res. Commun.* 161, 520 (1989)) vasodilation, bronchospasm, reflex or neuronal control of the viscera (Mantyh *et al.*, *PNAS* (1988) 85, 3235-9) and, possibly by arresting or slowing  $\beta$ -amyloid-mediated neurodegenerative changes (Yankner *et al.*, *Science*, (1990) 250, 279-82) in senile dementia of the Alzheimer type, Alzheimer's disease and Downs Syndrome. Substance P may also play a role in demyelinating diseases such as multiple sclerosis and amyotrophic lateral sclerosis (J. Luber-Narod *et al.*, poster presented at C.I.N.P. XVIIIth Congress, 28th June-2nd July, 1992). Antagonists selective for the substance P and/or the neurokinin A receptor may be useful in the treatment of asthmatic disease (Frossard *et al.*, *Life Sci.*, 49, 1941-1953 (1991); Advenier, *et al.*, *Biochem. Biophys. Res. Comm.*, 184(3), 1418-1424 (1992)).

20 **SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION**

This invention is directed to compounds of formula I.



30

The invention is also concerned with pharmaceutical formulations with these novel compounds as active ingredients and the use of the novel compounds and their formulations in the treatment of certain disorders.

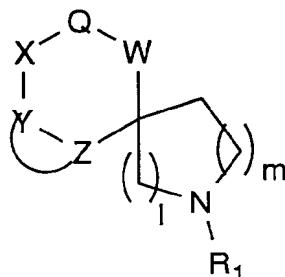
- 5 -

The compounds of this invention are tachykinin receptor antagonists and are useful in the treatment of inflammatory diseases, pain or migraine and asthma.

5 **DETAILED DESCRIPTION OF THE INVENTION**

This invention is directed to compounds of formula I.

10



15

I

or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof,

wherein the nitrogen expressly shown above is optionally quaternized with C1-4alkyl or phenylC1-4alkyl or is optionally present as the N-oxide (N+O-), and wherein:

20

I and m are each independently 0, 1, 2, 3, 4, or 5, with the proviso that 1 + m is equal to 1, 2, 3, 4, or 5;

R1 is selected from a group consisting of:

25

(1) hydrogen,  
 (2) linear or branched C1-8 alkyl, linear or branched C2-8 alkenyl, or linear or branched C2-8 alkynyl, wherein the C1-8 alkyl, C2-8 alkenyl or C2-8 alkynyl is optionally mono, di, tri or tetra substituted, the substituents independently selected from:

30

(a) hydroxy,  
 (b) oxo,  
 (c) cyano,  
 (d) halogen which is defined to include Br, Cl, I, and F,  
 (e) trifluoromethyl,

- 6 -

(f) phenyl or mono, di or trisubstituted phenyl, the substitutents independently selected from

- (1) phenyl,
- (2) hydroxy,
- (3) C<sub>1</sub>-3alkyl,
- (4) cyano,
- (5) halogen,
- (6) trifluoromethyl,

(7) -NR<sub>6</sub>COR<sub>7</sub>, wherein R<sub>6</sub> and R<sub>7</sub> are

independently selected from:

- (a) hydrogen,
- (b) C<sub>1</sub>-6 alkyl, or mono or disubstituted C<sub>1</sub>-6 alkyl, the substitutents independently selected from

- (1) phenyl, unsubstituted or substituted with hydroxy, C<sub>1</sub>-3alkyl, cyano, halogen, trifluoromethyl or C<sub>1</sub>-4alkoxy,

- (2) hydroxy,

- (3) oxo,

- (4) cyano,

- (5) halogen,

- (6) trifluoromethyl,

- (c) phenyl, pyridinyl or thiophene or mono, di or trisubstituted phenyl, pyridinyl or thiophene, the substitutents independently selected from

- (1) hydroxy,

- (2) C<sub>1</sub>-4alkyl,

- (3) cyano,

- (4) halogen,

- (5) trifluoromethyl,

- (d) C<sub>1</sub>-3alkyloxy,

or

- 7 -

R<sub>6</sub> and R<sub>7</sub> are joined together to form a 5-, 6-, or 7-membered monocyclic saturated ring containing 1 or 2 heteroatoms independently selected from nitrogen, oxygen, and sulfur, and in which the ring is unsubstituted or mono or disubstituted, the substituents independently selected from

- 5 (a) hydroxy,
- 10 (b) oxo,
- (c) cyano,
- (d) halogen,
- (e) trifluoromethyl,

- (8) -NR<sub>6</sub>CO<sub>2</sub>R<sub>7</sub>,
- (9) -NR<sub>6</sub>CONHR<sub>7</sub>,
- (10) -NR<sub>6</sub>S(O)<sub>j</sub>R<sub>7</sub>, wherein j is 1 or 2,
- 15 (11) -CONR<sub>6</sub>R<sub>7</sub>,
- (12) -COR<sub>6</sub>,
- (13) -CO<sub>2</sub>R<sub>6</sub>,
- (14) -OR<sub>6</sub>,
- (15) -S(O)<sub>k</sub>R<sub>6</sub> wherein k is 0, 1 or 2,
- 20 (16) heteroaryl, wherein heteroaryl is selected from the group consisting of:

- 25 (1) benzimidazolyl,
- (2) benzofuranyl,
- (3) benzoxazolyl,
- (4) furanyl,
- (5) imidazolyl,
- (6) indolyl,
- (7) isoxazolyl,
- (8) isothiazolyl,
- 30 (9) oxadiazolyl,
- (10) oxazolyl,
- (11) pyrazinyl,
- (12) pyrazolyl,
- (13) pyridyl,

- 8 -

5

- (14) pyrimidyl,
- (15) pyrrolyl,
- (16) quinolyl,
- (17) tetrazolyl,
- (18) thiadiazolyl,
- (19) thiazolyl,
- (20) thienyl, and
- (21) triazolyl,

10

wherein the heteroaryl is unsubstituted or mono, di or trisubstituted, the substituents independently selected from,

15

- (a) hydroxy,
- (b) oxo,
- (c) cyano,
- (d) halogen,
- (e) trifluoromethyl,
- (g) -NR<sub>6</sub>R<sub>7</sub>,
- (h) -NR<sub>6</sub>COR<sub>7</sub>,
- (i) -NR<sub>6</sub>CO<sub>2</sub>R<sub>7</sub>,
- (j) -NR<sub>6</sub>CONHR<sub>7</sub>,
- (k) -NR<sub>6</sub>S(O)<sub>j</sub>R<sub>7</sub>,
- (l) -CONR<sub>6</sub>R<sub>7</sub>,
- (m) -COR<sub>6</sub>,
- (n) -CO<sub>2</sub>R<sub>6</sub>,
- (o) -OR<sub>6</sub>,
- (p) -S(O)<sub>k</sub>R<sub>6</sub>,
- (q) heteroaryl, wherein heteroaryl is selected from the group consisting of:

20

- (1) benzimidazolyl,
- (2) benzofuranyl,
- (3) benzoxazolyl,
- (4) furanyl,
- (5) imidazolyl,
- (6) indolyl,

- 9 -

- (7) isoxazolyl,
- (8) isothiazolyl,
- (9) oxadiazolyl,
- (10) oxazolyl,
- 5 (11) pyrazinyl,
- (12) pyrazolyl,
- (13) pyridyl,
- (14) pyrimidyl,
- (15) pyrrolyl,
- 10 (16) quinolyl,
- (17) tetrazolyl,
- (18) thiadiazolyl,
- (19) thiazolyl,
- (20) thienyl,
- 15 (21) triazolyl,

wherein the heteroaryl is unsubstituted or mono di or trisubstituted, the substituents independently selected from

- 20 (1) phenyl,
- (2) hydroxy,
- (3) oxo,
- (4) cyano,
- (5) halogen,
- (6) trifluoromethyl,

25

wherein the nitrogen of definition R1 2(g) as defined above is optionally quaternized with C<sub>1</sub>-4alkyl or phenylC<sub>1</sub>-4alkyl or is optionally present as the N-oxide (N<sup>+</sup>O<sup>-</sup>);

W is selected from the group consisting of

- 30 (1) a covalent bond
- (2) C<sub>1</sub>-3 alkyl, unsubstituted or substituted with
  - (a) oxo,
  - (b) hydroxy
  - (c) OR<sub>6</sub>,

- 10 -

(d) halogen,  
(e) trifluoromethyl,  
(f) phenyl or mono, di or trisubstituted phenyl,  
the substituents independently selected from

5 (1) hydroxy,  
(2) cyano,  
(3) halogen,  
(4) trifluoromethyl,  
(3)  $S(O)k$ ,  
10 (4) ( $C_{1-3}$  alkyl)- $S(O)k$ ,  
(5)  $S(O)k$ -( $C_{1-2}$  alkyl),  
(6)  $S(O)k$ -NH,  
(7)  $S(O)j$ -NH( $C_{1-2}$  alkyl),  
(8)  $S(O)j$ -NR<sub>6</sub>,  
15 (9)  $S(O)j$ -NR<sub>6</sub>-( $C_{1-2}$  alkyl),  
(10) CONH,  
(11) CONH-( $C_{1-2}$  alkyl),  
(12) CONR<sub>6</sub>,  
20 (13) CONR<sub>6</sub>-( $C_{1-2}$  alkyl),  
(14) CO<sub>2</sub>,  
(15) CO<sub>2</sub>-( $C_{1-2}$  alkyl);

Q = NR<sub>2</sub>, O, S, S(O), or SO<sub>2</sub>, with the proviso that when W is a covalent bond and X is  $C_{1-3}$ alkyl, then Q must be NR<sub>2</sub>;

R<sub>2</sub> is selected from a group consisting of:

25 (1) hydrogen,  
(2)  $C_{1-8}$  linear or branched alkyl, unsubstituted,  
monosubstituted or multiply substituted with

(a) -OR<sub>6</sub>,  
(b) = O,  
30 (c) -NHCOR<sub>6</sub>,  
(d) -NR<sub>6</sub>R<sub>7</sub>,  
(e) -CN,  
(f) -halogen,  
(g) -CF<sub>3</sub>,

- 11 -

(h) -phenyl, unsubstituted or substituted, wherein the substituents are selected from the group consisting of

- (1) hydroxy,
- (2) cyano,
- (3) halogen,
- (4) trifluoromethyl,

(3) S(O)R<sub>8</sub>, wherein R<sub>8</sub> is C<sub>1-6</sub> linear or branched alkyl, unsubstituted, mono di or trisubstituted with

- (a) hydroxy,
- (b) oxo,
- (c) cyano,
- (d) -OR<sub>6</sub>,
- (e) -NR<sub>6</sub>R<sub>7</sub>,
- (f) -NR<sub>6</sub>COR<sub>7</sub>,
- (g) -halogen,
- (h) -CF<sub>3</sub>,
- (i) -phenyl or mono, di or trisubstituted phenyl, the substituents independently selected from
  - (1) hydroxy,
  - (2) oxo,
  - (3) cyano,
  - (4) -NHR<sub>6</sub>,
  - (5) -NR<sub>6</sub>R<sub>7</sub>,
  - (6) -NR<sub>6</sub>COR<sub>7</sub>,
  - (7) -halogen,
  - (8) -CF<sub>3</sub>, and
  - (9) C<sub>1-3</sub> alkyl,
- (4) SO<sub>2</sub>R<sub>8</sub>,
- (5) COR<sub>8</sub>,
- (6) CO<sub>2</sub>R<sub>8</sub>;
- (7) CONR<sub>7</sub>R<sub>8</sub>;

X is selected from the group consisting of

- 12 -

(1) a covalent bond  
(2) C1-3 alkyl, unsubstituted or substituted with  
(a) oxo,  
(b) OR<sub>6</sub>,  
5 (c) halogen,  
(d) trifluoromethyl,  
(e) phenyl or mono, di or trisubstituted phenyl,  
the substituents independently selected from  
(1) OR<sub>6</sub>,  
10 (2) halogen, and  
(3) trifluoromethyl,  
(3) S(O)<sub>k</sub>,  
(4) (C1-3 alkyl)S(O)<sub>k</sub>,  
(5) S(O)<sub>k</sub>(C1-2 alkyl),  
15 (6) NHS(O)<sub>j</sub>,  
(7) NH(C1-2 alkyl)S(O)<sub>j</sub>,  
(8) S(O)<sub>j</sub>NR<sub>6</sub>,  
(9) S(O)<sub>j</sub>NR<sub>6</sub>-(C1-2 alkyl),  
(10) NHCO,  
20 (11) NHCO-(C1-2 alkyl),  
(12) NR<sub>6</sub>CO,  
(13) NR<sub>6</sub>-(C1-2 alkyl)CO,  
(14) O(CO), and  
(15) (C1-2 alkyl)O(CO),

25

Y-Z considered together are 2 adjoining atoms of the ring



30

said ring being an phenyl, naphthyl or heteroaryl group, with the heteroaryls selected from the group consisting of:

(1) benzimidazolyl,  
(2) benzofuranyl,  
(3) benzoxazolyl,

- 13 -

- (4) furanyl,
- (5) imidazolyl,
- (6) indolyl,
- (7) isoxazolyl,
- 5 (8) isothiazolyl,
- (9) oxadiazolyl,
- (10) oxazolyl,
- (11) pyrazinyl,
- (12) pyrazolyl,
- 10 (13) pyridyl,
- (14) pyrimidyl,
- (15) pyrrolyl,
- (16) quinolyl,
- (17) tetrazolyl,
- 15 (18) thiadiazolyl,
- (19) thiazolyl,
- (20) thiaryl,
- (21) triazolyl,

and wherein the aryl or heteroaryl group is unsubstituted,  
20 mono, di or tri substituted, the substituents selected from:

- (a) hydrogen,
- (b) C<sub>1</sub>-6 alkyl, branched or unbranched, unsubstituted or  
mono or disubstituted, the substituents being selected  
from hydrogen and hydroxy,
- 25 (c) oxo
- (d) OR<sub>6</sub>, wherein R<sub>6</sub> is as defined immediately above,
- (e) halogen,
- (f) trifluoromethyl,
- (g) nitro,
- 30 (h) cyano,
- (i) .NHR<sub>6</sub>,
- (j) NR<sub>6</sub>R<sub>7</sub>,
- (k) NHCOR<sub>6</sub>,
- (l) NR<sub>6</sub>COR<sub>7</sub>,

- 14 -

- (m)  $\text{NHCO}_2\text{R}_6$ ,
- (n)  $\text{NR}_6\text{CO}_2\text{R}_7$ ,
- (o)  $\text{NHS(O)}_j\text{R}_6$ ,
- (p)  $\text{NR}_6\text{S(O)}_j\text{R}_7$ ,
- 5 (q)  $\text{CONR}_6\text{R}_7$ ,
- (r)  $\text{COR}_6$ ,
- (s)  $\text{CO}_2\text{R}_6$ ,
- (t)  $\text{S(O)}_j\text{R}_6$ ,
- 10 (u) heteroaryl, wherein heteroaryl is selected from the group consisting of:
  - (a) benzimidazolyl,
  - (b) benzofuranyl,
  - (c) benzoxazolyl,
  - (d) furanyl,
  - 15 (e) imidazolyl,
  - (f) indolyl,
  - (g) isoxazolyl,
  - (h) isothiazolyl,
  - (i) oxadiazolyl,
  - (j) oxazolyl,
  - (k) pyrazinyl,
  - (l) pyrazolyl,
  - (m) pyridyl,
  - 20 (n) pyrimidyl,
  - (o) pyrrolyl,
  - (p) quinolyl,
  - (q) tetrazolyl,
  - (r) thiadiazolyl,
  - (s) thiazolyl,
  - 25 (t) thietyl,
  - (u) triazolyl,
- 30 and wherein the heteroaryl is unsubstituted mono or di substituted, the substitutents selected from
  - (1) hydrogen,

- 15 -

(2) C<sub>1</sub>-6 alkyl, branched or unbranched, unsubstituted or mono or disubstituted, the substituents being selected from hydrogen and hydroxy,  
5 (3) oxo,  
(4) OR<sub>6</sub>,  
(5) trifluoromethyl,  
(6) nitro,  
(7) cyano,  
(8) NHR<sub>6</sub>,  
10 (9) NR<sub>6</sub>R<sub>7</sub>,  
(10) NHCOR<sub>6</sub>,  
(11) NR<sub>6</sub>COR<sub>7</sub>,  
(12) NHCO<sub>2</sub>R<sub>6</sub>,  
(13) NR<sub>6</sub>CO<sub>2</sub>R<sub>7</sub>,  
15 (14) NHS(O)jR<sub>6</sub>,  
(15) NR<sub>6</sub>S(O)jR<sub>7</sub>,  
(16) CONR<sub>6</sub>R<sub>7</sub>,  
(17) COR<sub>6</sub>,  
(18) CO<sub>2</sub>R<sub>6</sub>,  
20 (19) S(O)jR<sub>6</sub>, and  
(20) phenyl.

One subclass of this invention consists of structures tabulated below linked to R<sub>1</sub> (as detailed immediately above) via the 25 broken bond, and optionally substituted at the positions indicated by numbers 1-8 with

(a) hydroxy,  
(b) oxo,  
(c) cyano,  
30 (d) -NR<sub>6</sub>R<sub>7</sub>,  
(e) -NHCOR<sub>6</sub>R<sub>7</sub>,  
(f) -halogen,  
(g) -CF<sub>3</sub>,

- 16 -

(h) -phenyl or mono, di or trisubstituted phenyl, the substituents independently selected from (a) through (g) and C1-3 alkyl;  
the tabulated structures being

5

10

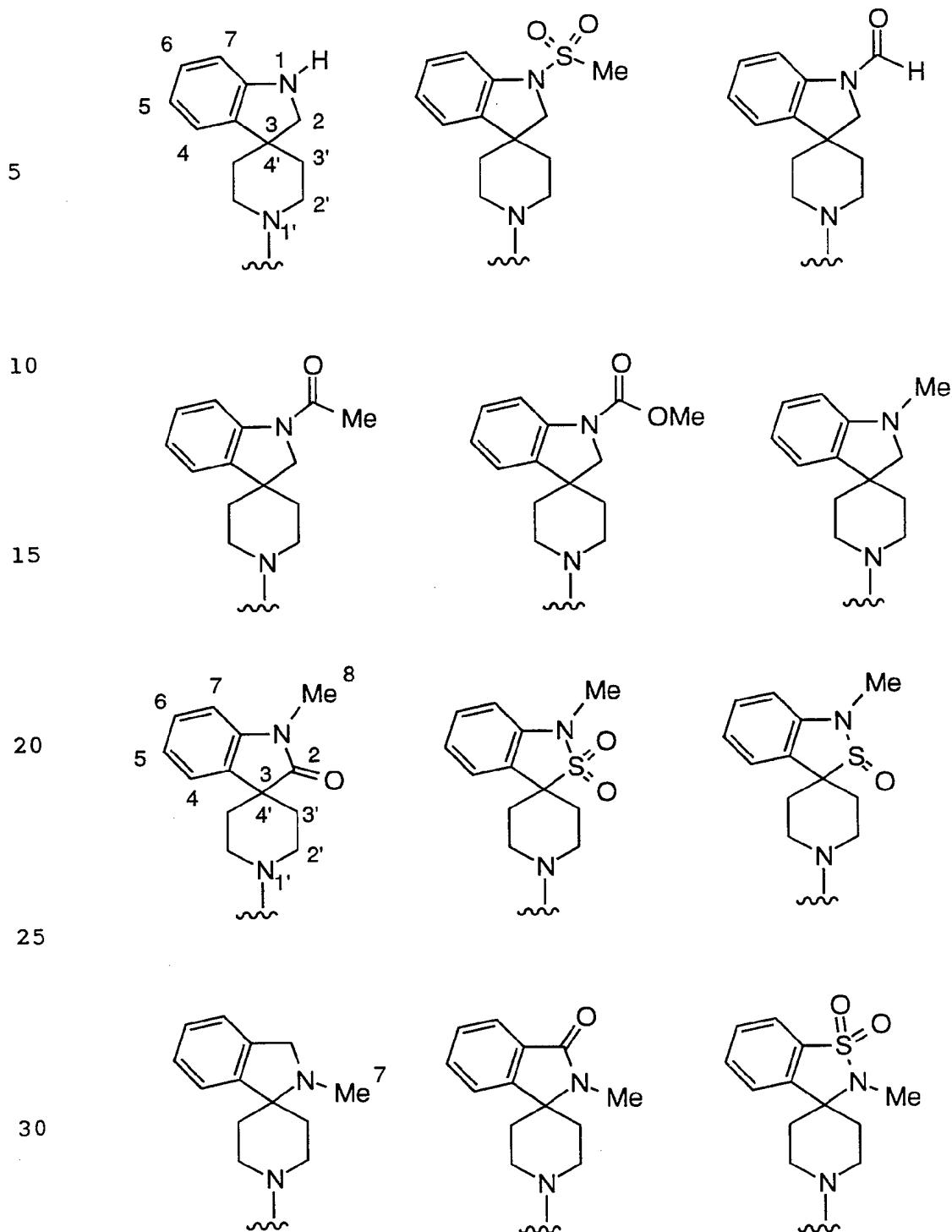
15

20

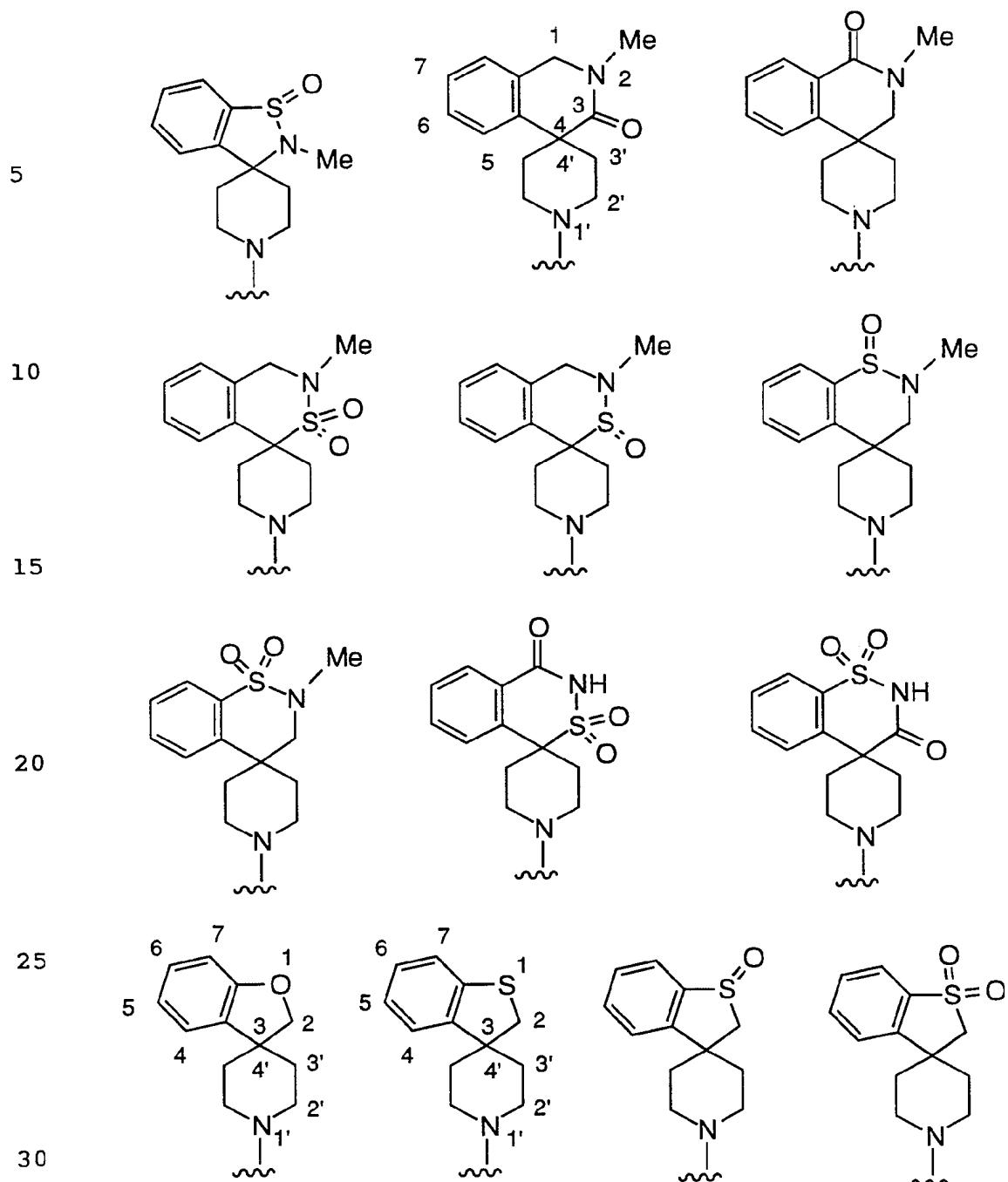
25

30

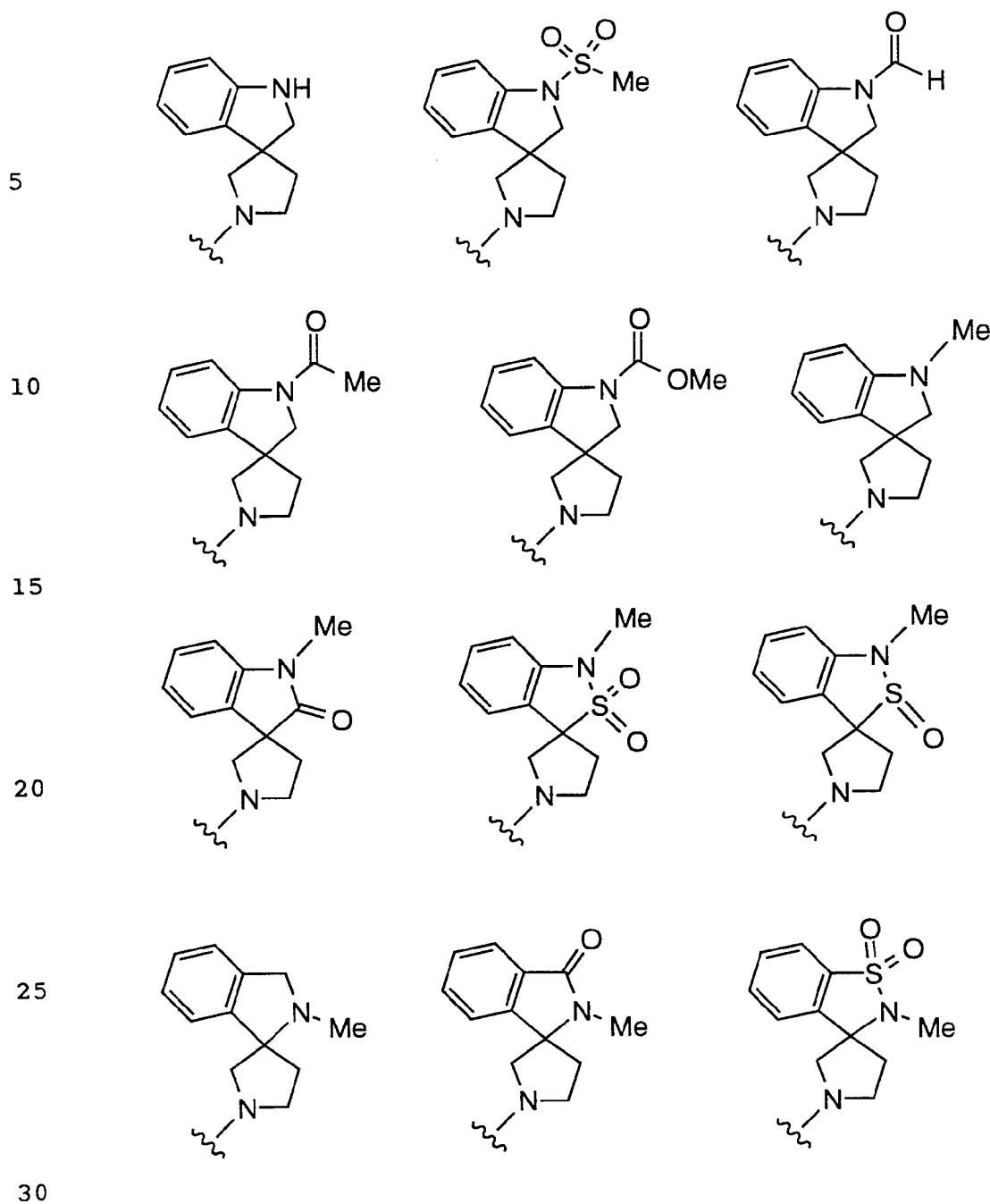
- 17 -



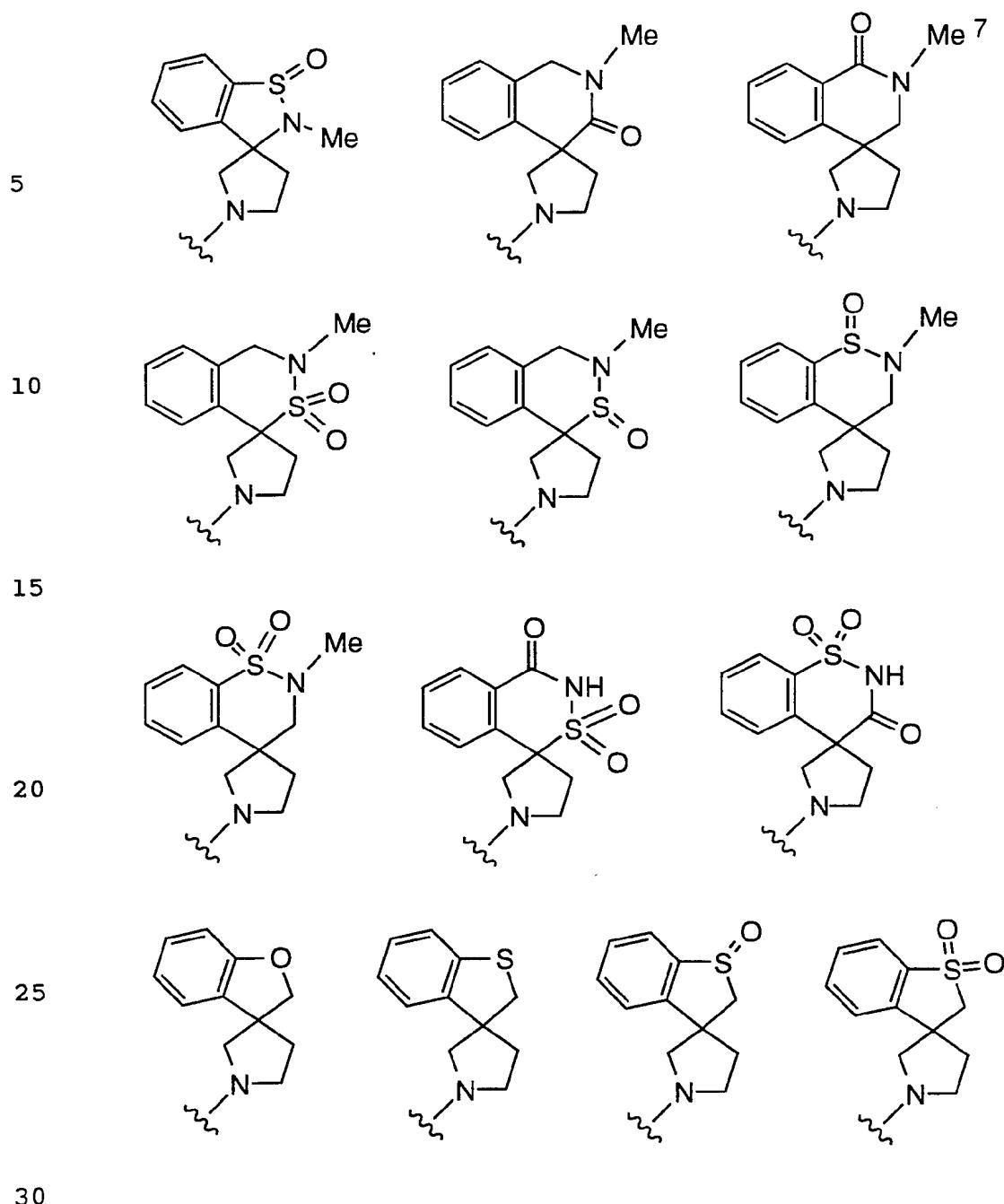
- 18 -



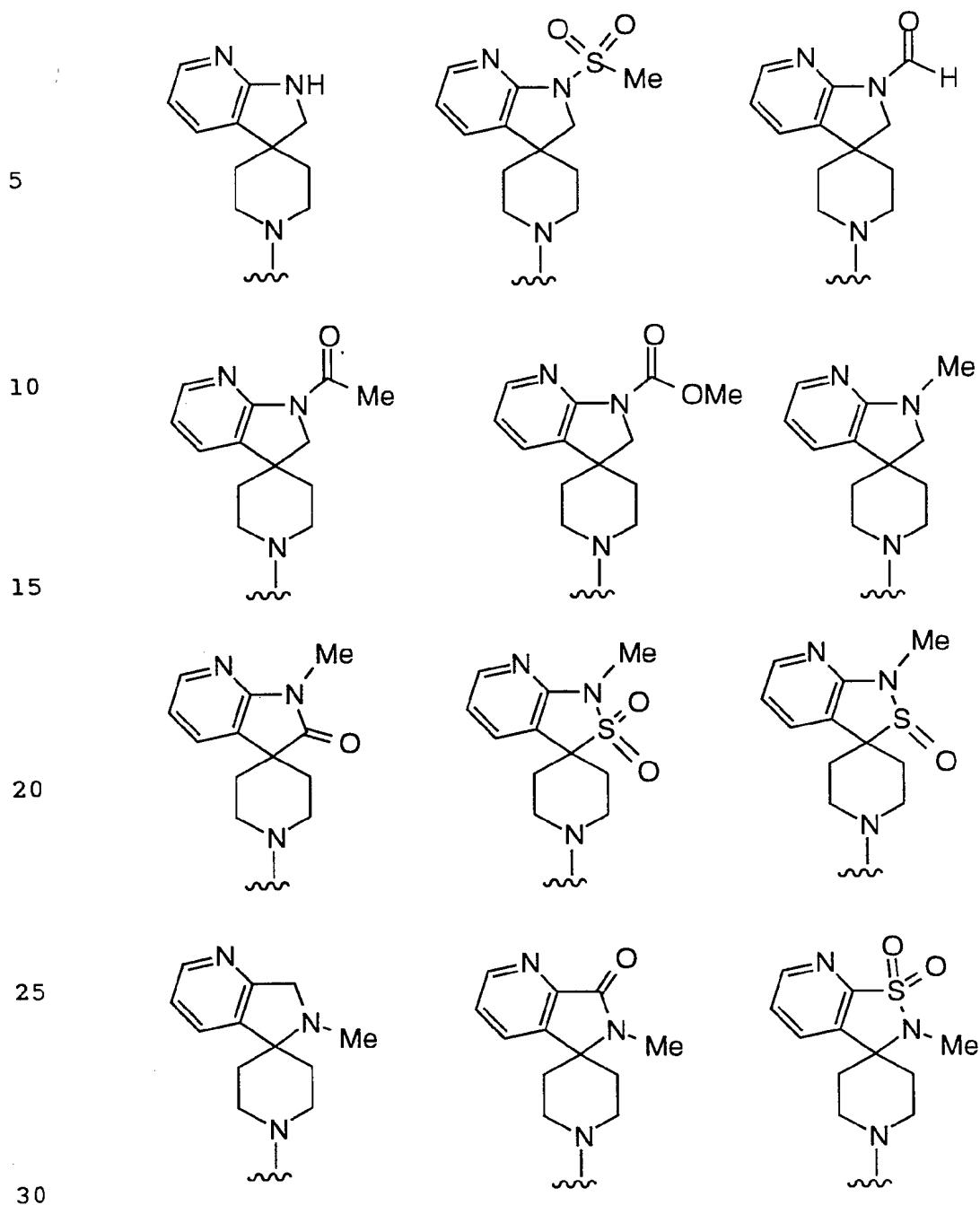
- 19 -



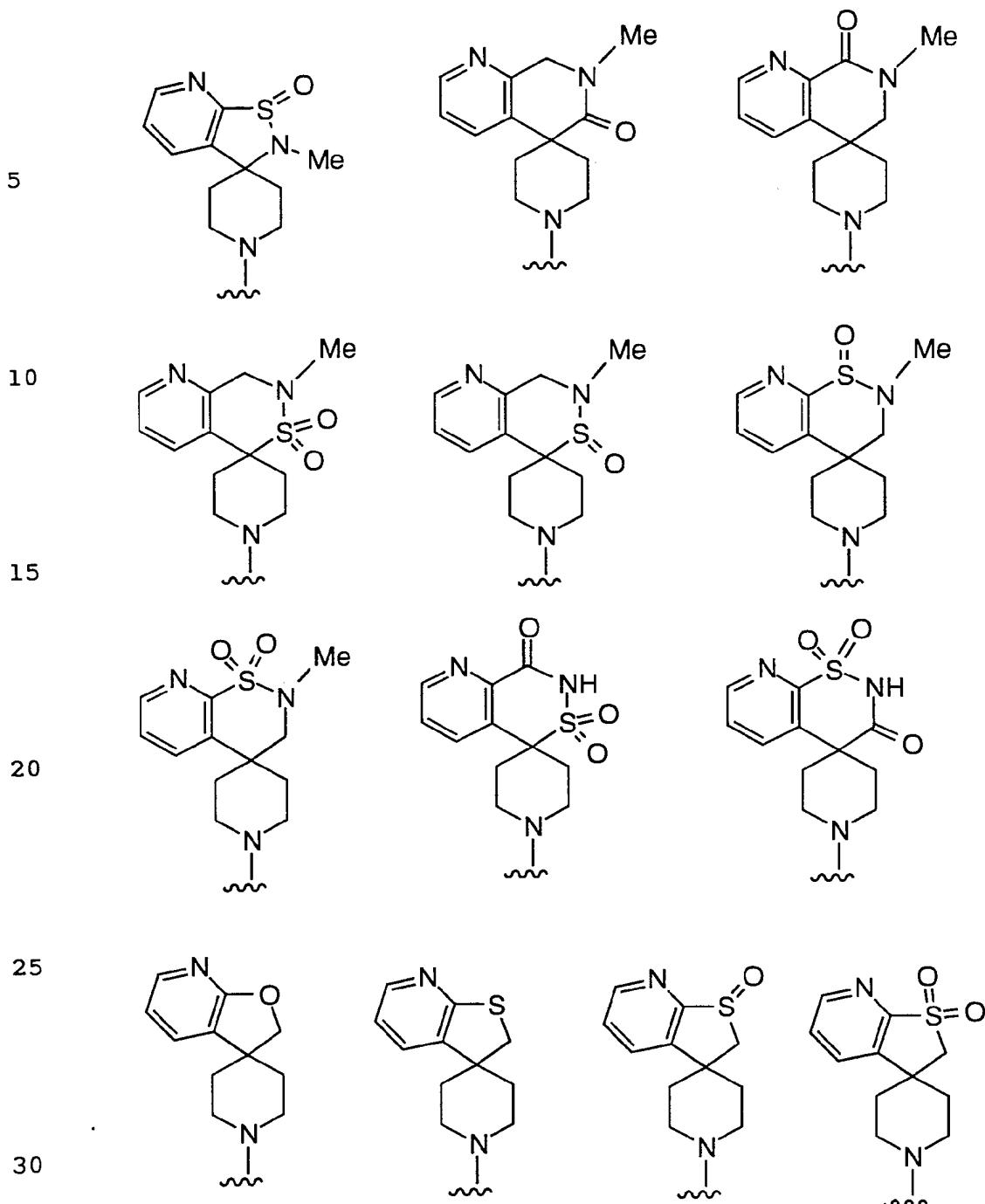
- 20 -



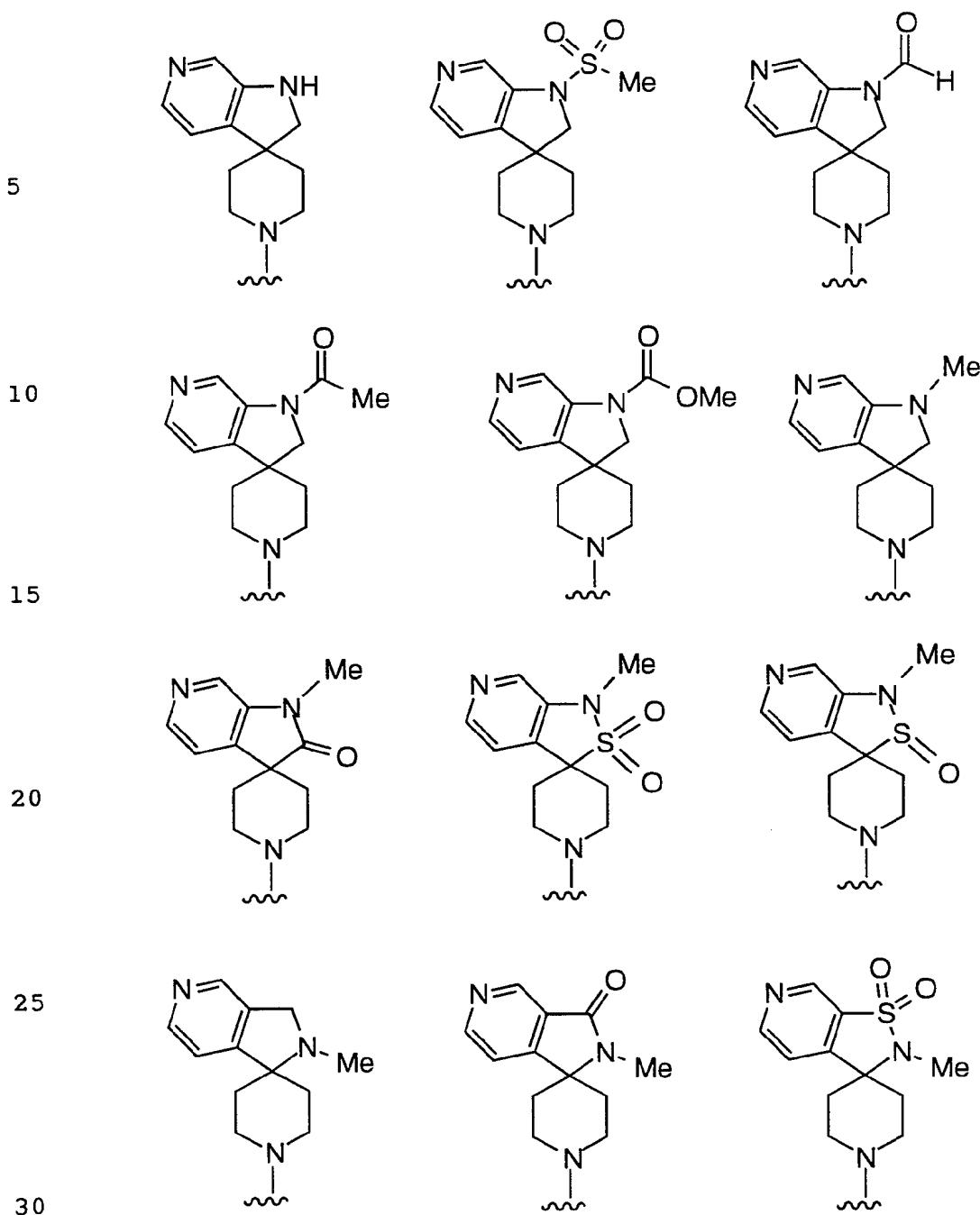
- 21 -



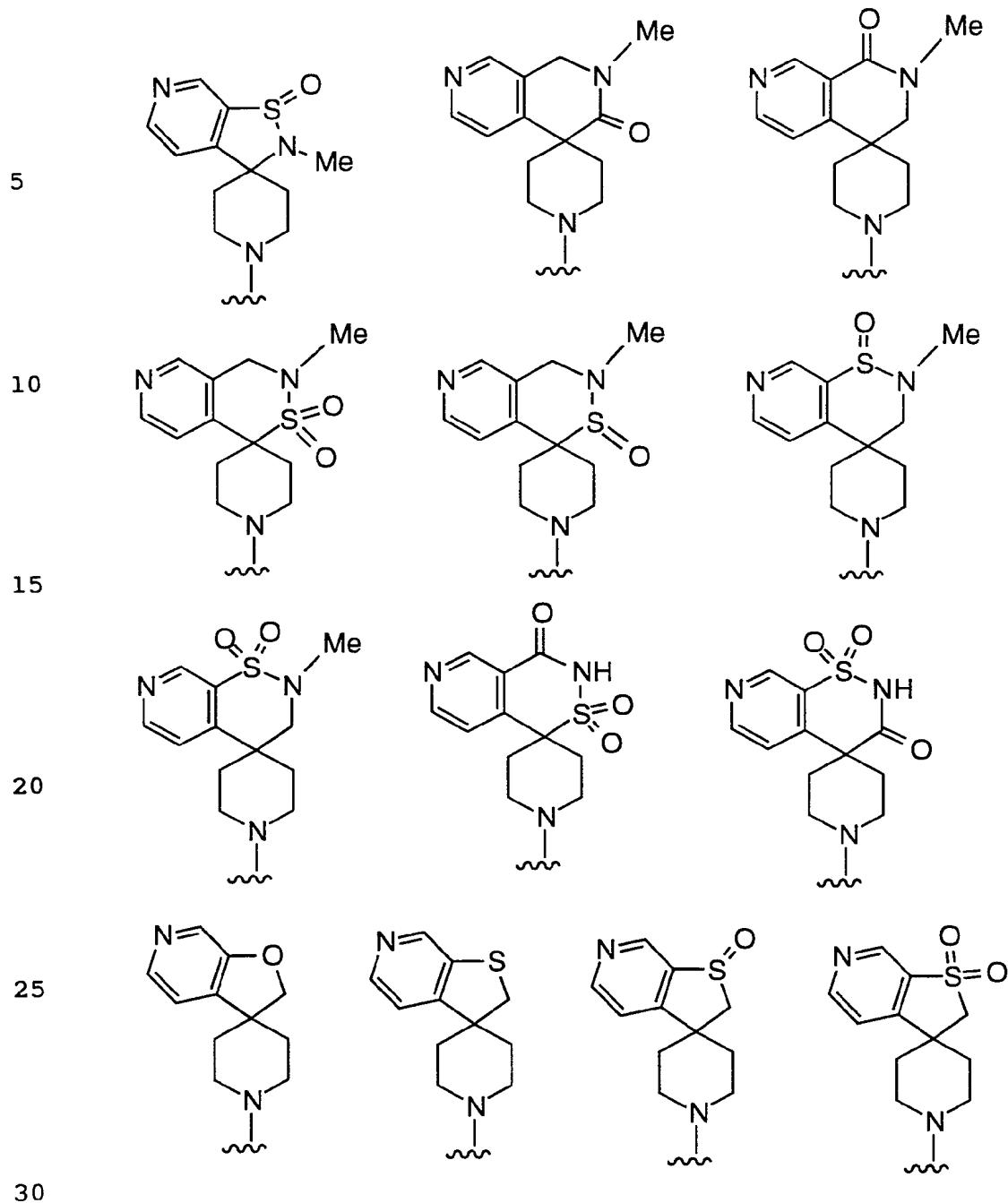
- 22 -



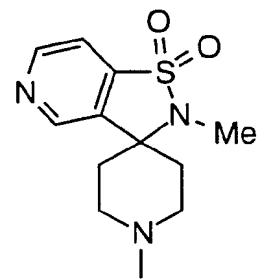
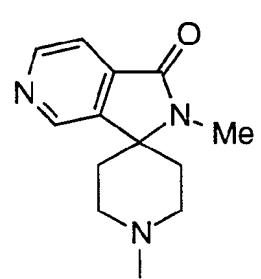
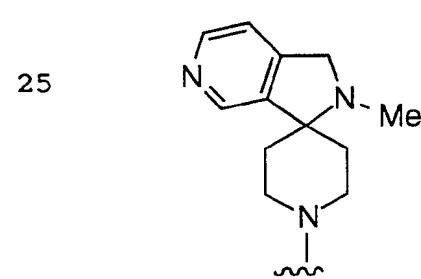
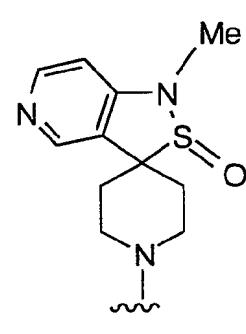
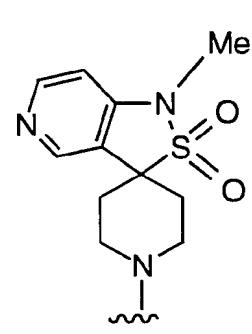
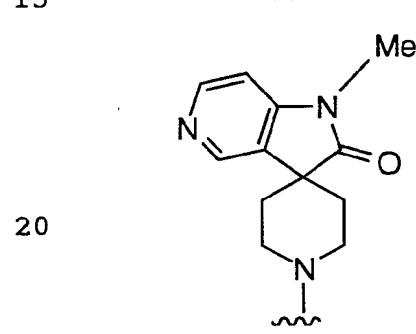
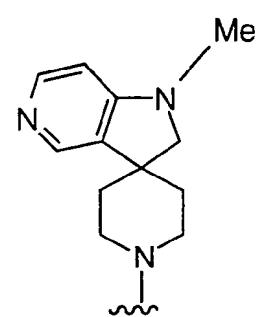
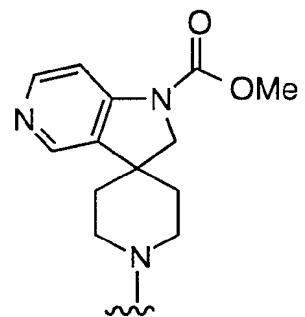
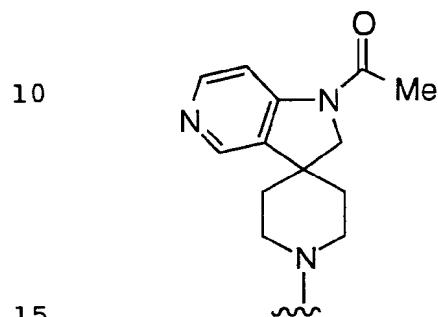
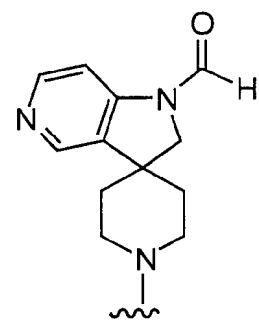
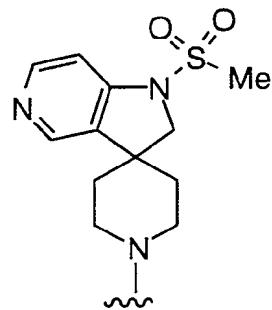
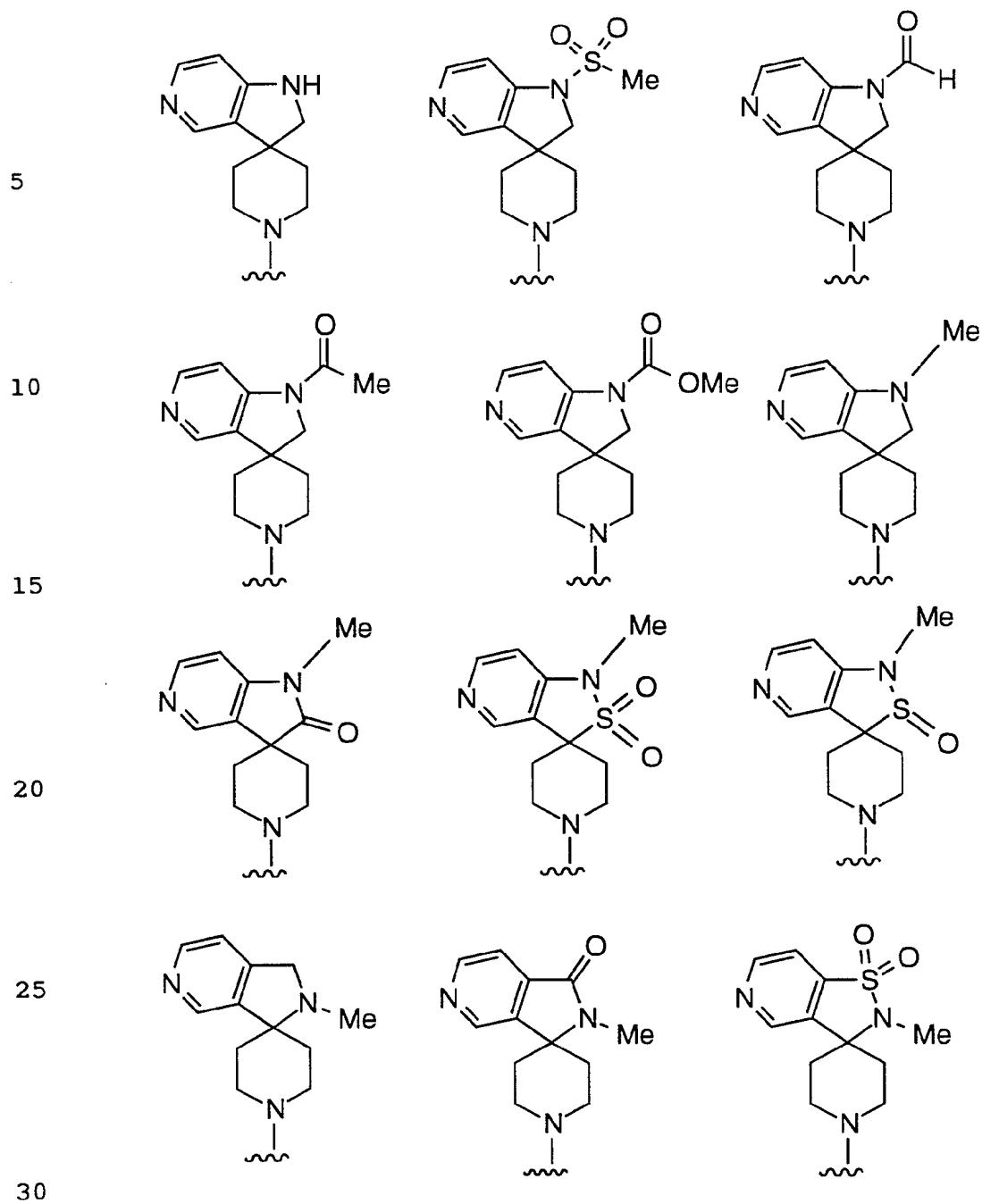
- 23 -



- 24 -

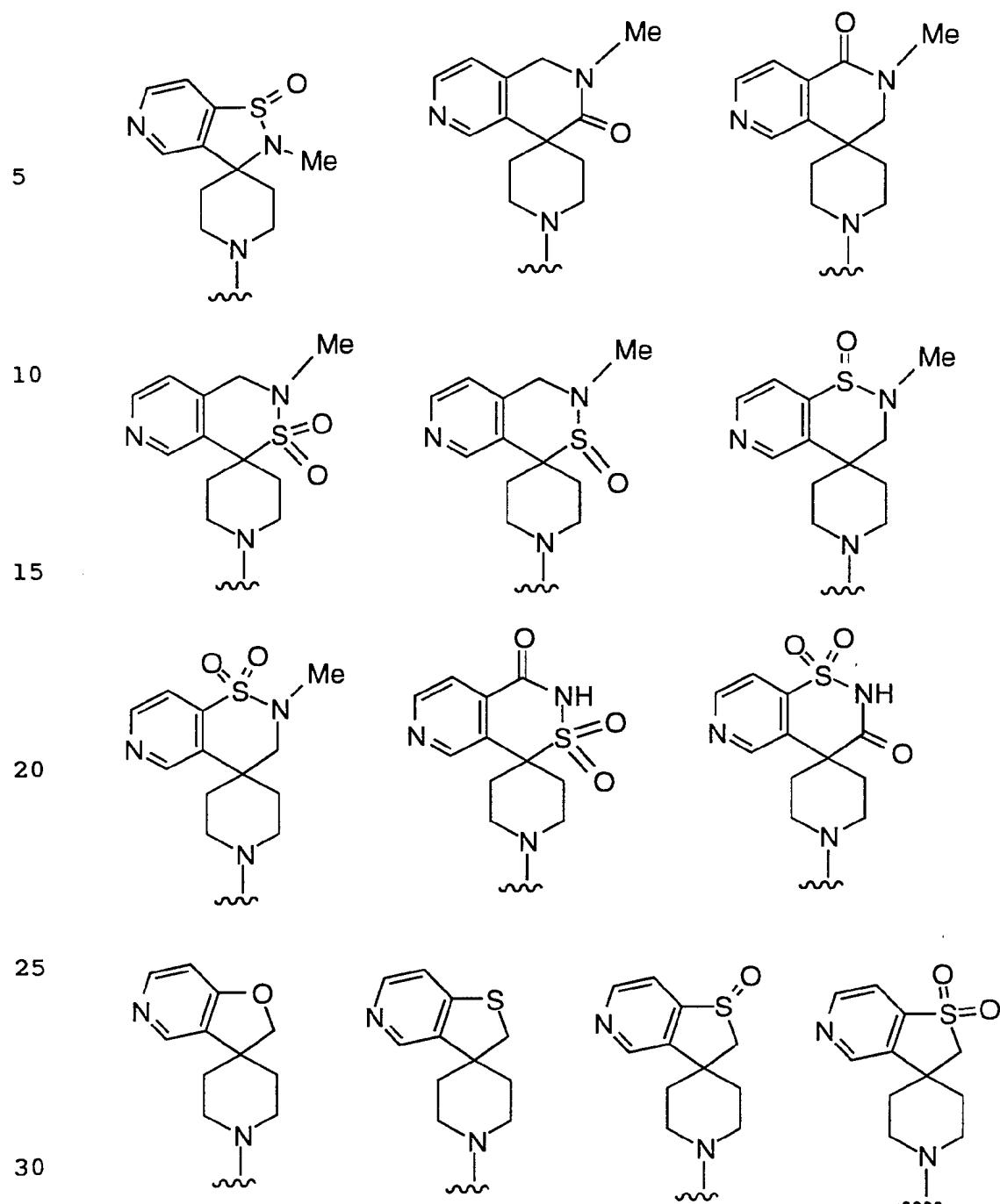


- 25 -

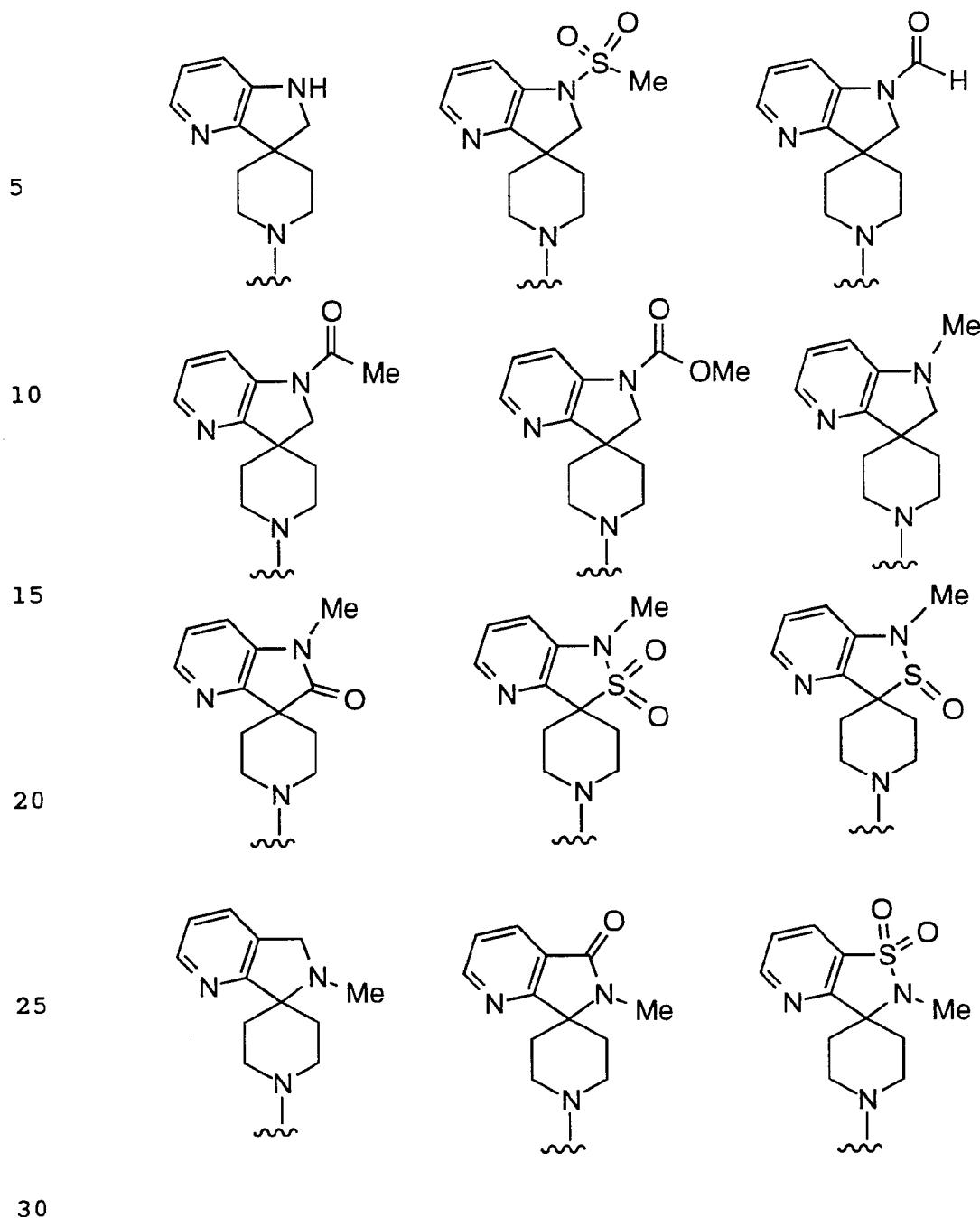


30

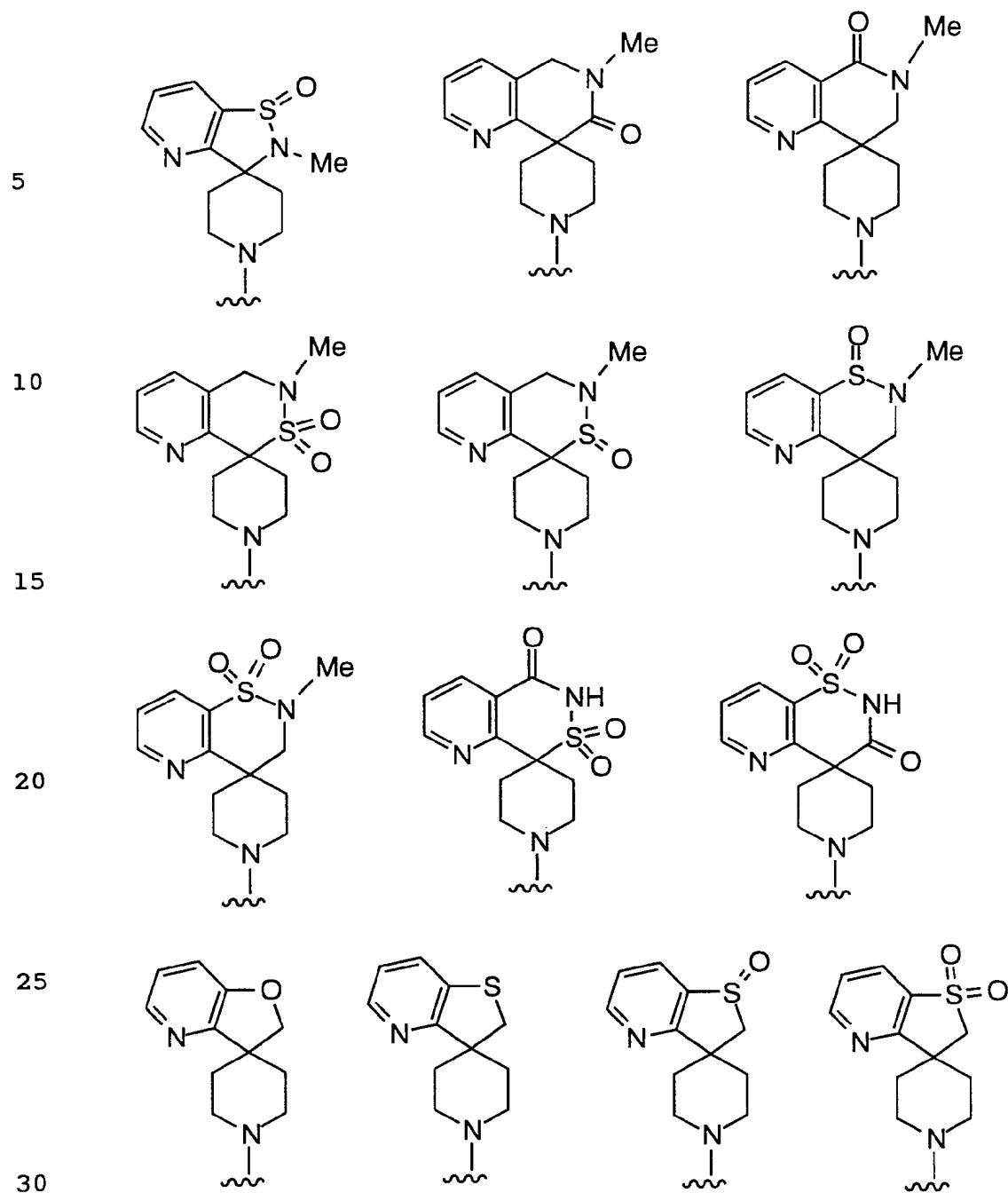
- 26 -



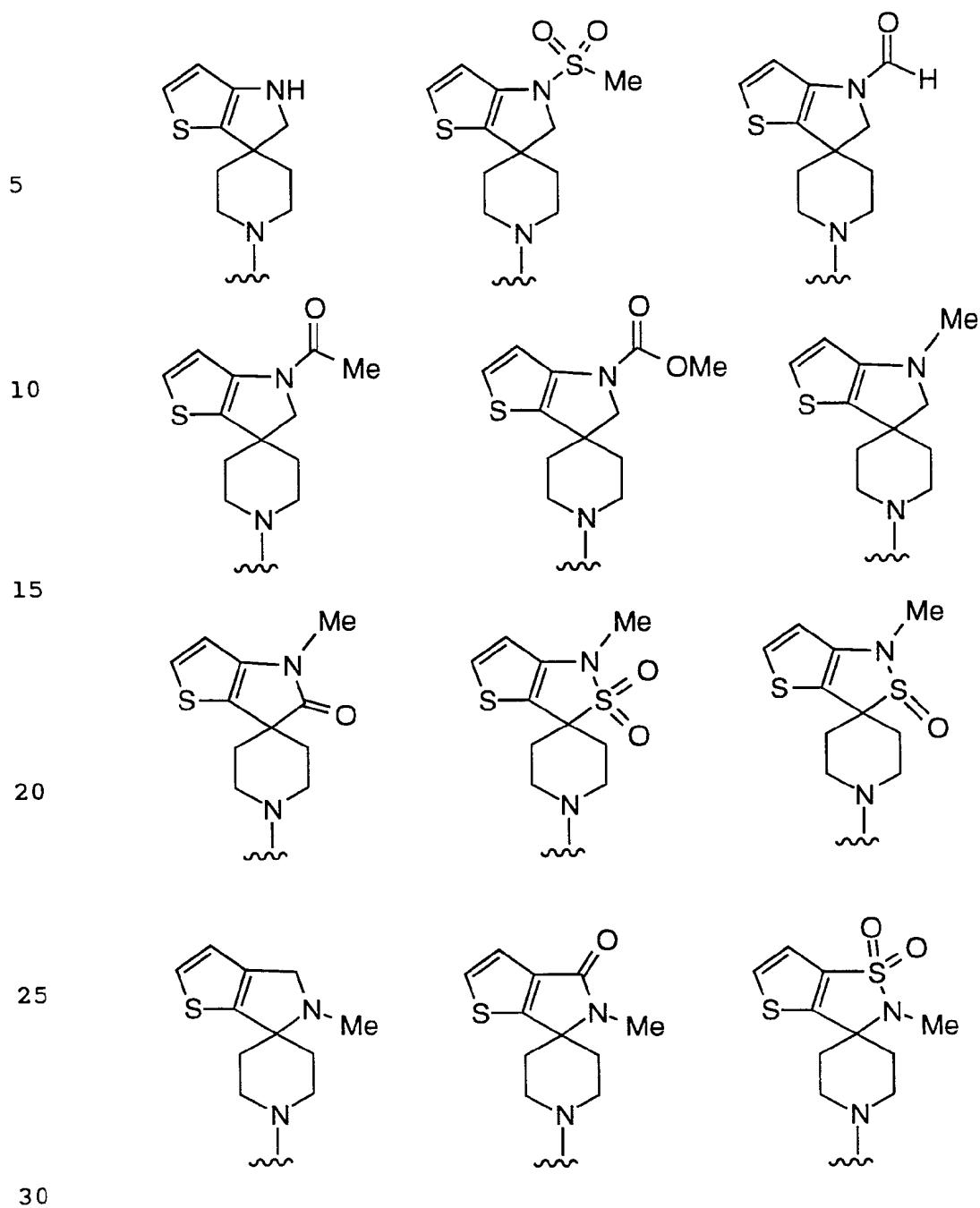
- 27 -



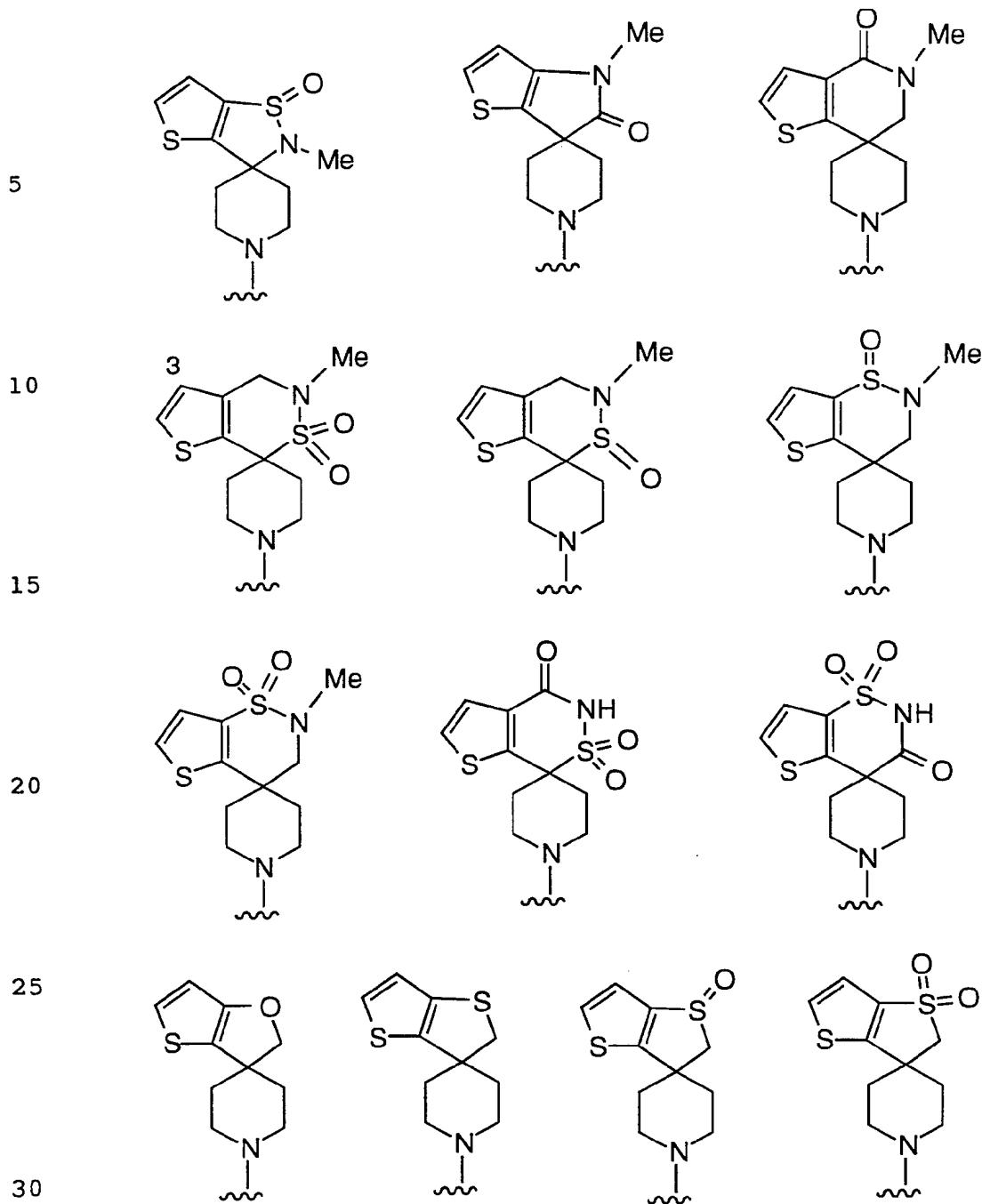
- 28 -



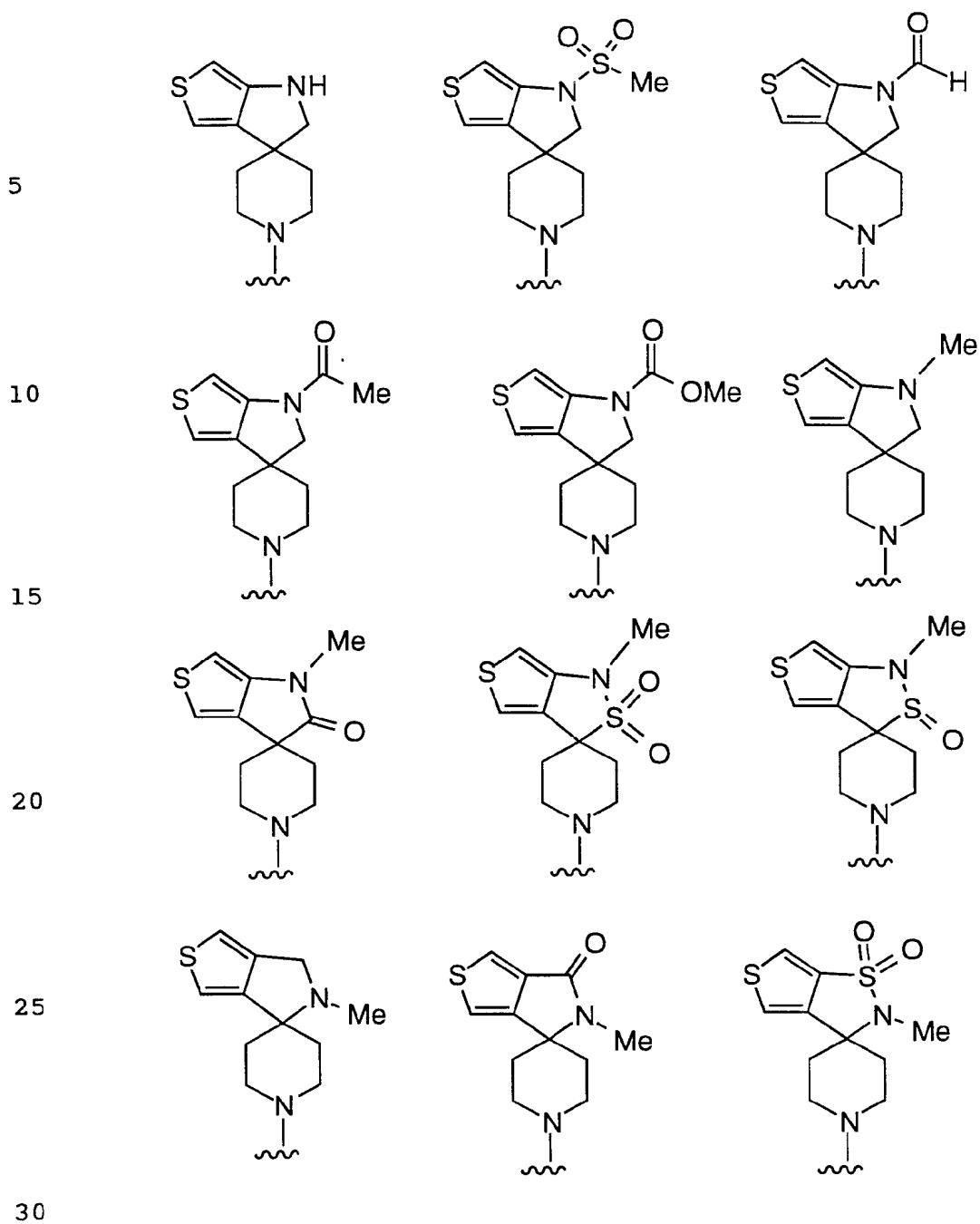
- 29 -



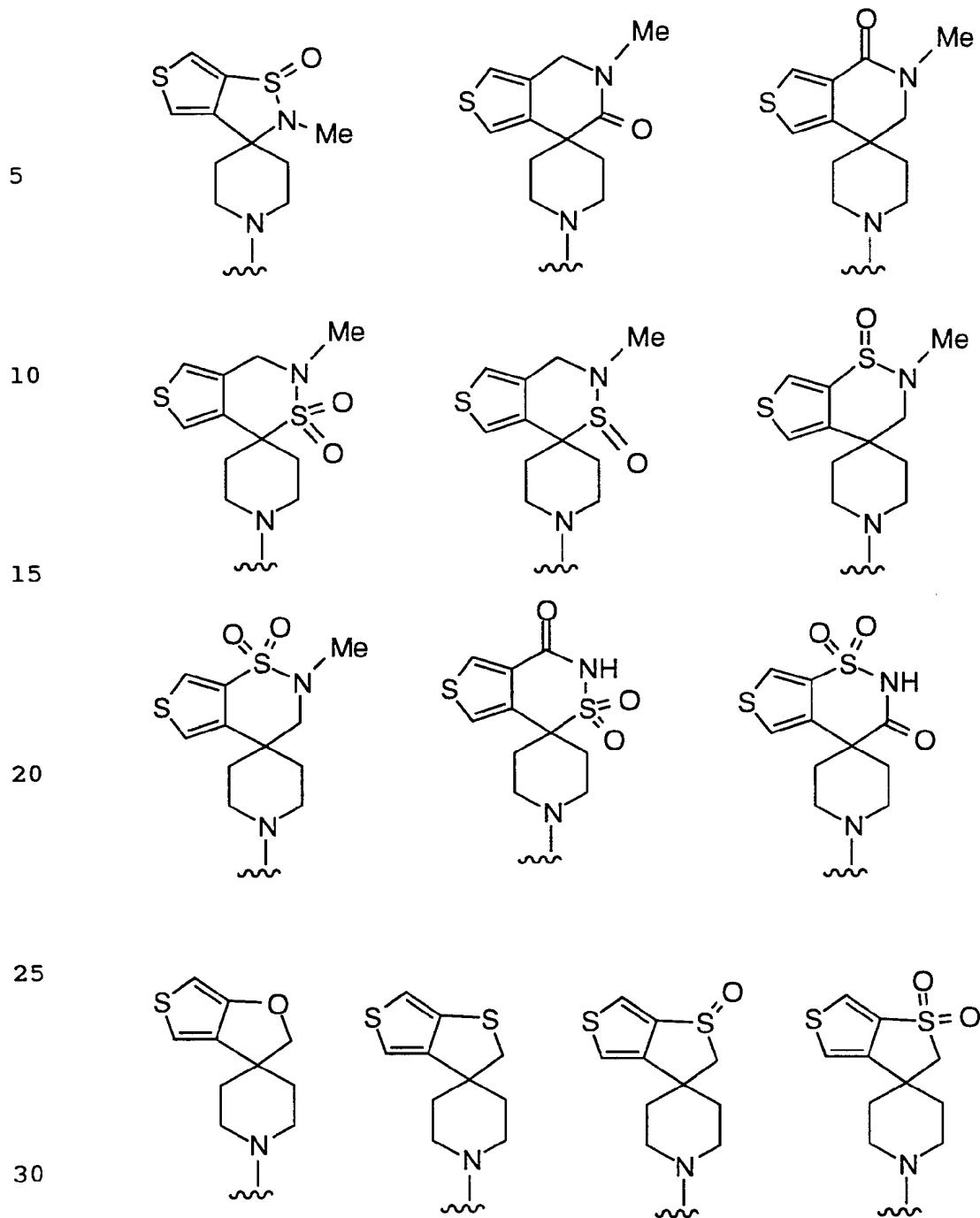
- 30 -



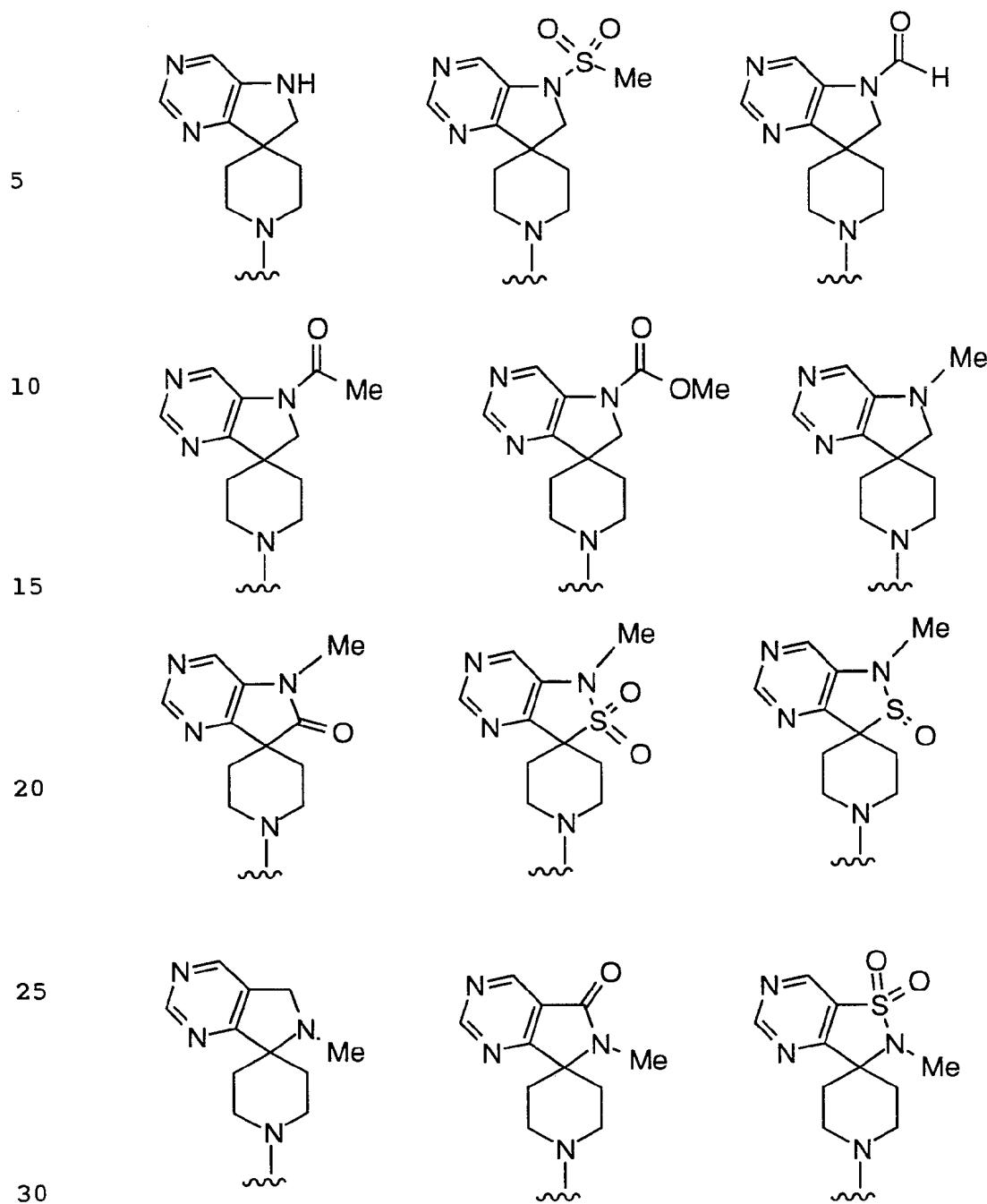
- 31 -



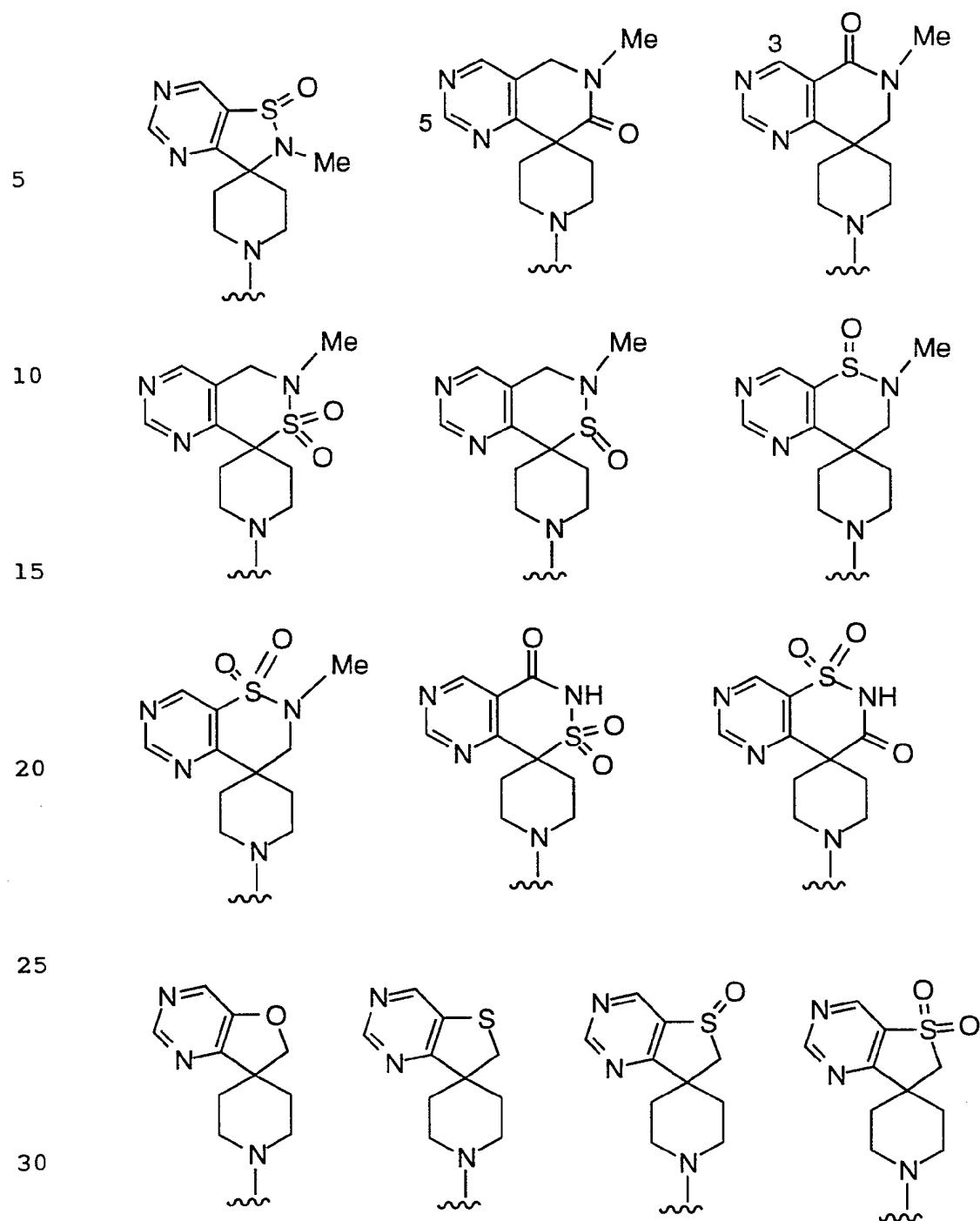
- 32 -



- 33 -



- 34 -



- 35 -

As is clear from the examples and schemes, the designation:

5

$\langle\rangle_1$  or  $\langle\rangle_m$

in formula I is interchangeable with  $(CH_2)_1$  or  $(CH_2)_m$  respectively. As appreciated by those of skill in the art, halo as used herein are intended to include chloro, fluoro, bromo and iodo.

10 Exemplifying the invention are the compounds of the examples including the group consisting of

- (a) 1'-(3-(S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl)-4-(t-butoxycarbonyl (methylamino)) butyl)-1-methanesulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine);
- 15 (b) 1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3,5-dimethylbenzoyl)(methylamino))butyl)-1-methanesulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine);
- (c) 1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(benzoyl)(methylamino))butyl)-1-methanesulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine);
- 20 (d) 1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3,5-bistrifluoromethylbenzoyl)(methylamino))butyl)-1-methanesulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine);
- (e) 1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3-methylbenzoyl)(methylamino))butyl)-1-methanesulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine);
- 25 (f) 1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3-chlorobenzoyl)(methylamino))butyl)-1-methanesulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine);
- (g) 1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3-trifluoromethyl-benzoyl)(methylamino))butyl)-1-methanesulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine);
- 30 (h) 1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3,5-dichlorobenzoyl)(methylamino))butyl)-1-methanesulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine);

- 36 -

- (i) 1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3-trifluoromethyl-phenylacetyl)(methylamino)butyl)-1-methanesulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine);
- 5 (j) 1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3-isopropoxy-phenylacetyl)(methylamino)butyl)-1-methanesulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine);
- (k) 1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(benzenesulfonyl)(methylamino)butyl)-1-methanesulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine);
- 10 (l) 1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3,5-dimethylbenzoyl)(methylamino)butyl)-1-benzyloxycarbonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine);
- (m) 1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3,5-dimethylbenzoyl)(methylamino)butyl)-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine);
- 15 (n) 1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3,5-dimethylbenzoyl)(methylamino)butyl)-1-propionyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine);
- (o) 1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3,5-dimethylbenzoyl)(methylamino)butyl)-1-formyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine);
- 20 (p) 1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3,5-dimethylbenzoyl)(methylamino)butyl)-1-t-butylcarbonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine);
- (q) 1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3,5-dimethylbenzoyl)(methylamino)butyl)-1-methylaminocarbonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine);
- 25 (r) 1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3,5-dimethylbenzoyl)(methylamino)butyl)-1-ethoxycarbonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine);
- 30 (s) 1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3,5-dimethylbenzoyl)(methylamino)butyl)-1-ethanesulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine);

- 37 -

(t) 1'((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3,5-dimethylbenzoyl)(methylamino))butyl)-1-*i*-propanesulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine);

5 (u) 1'((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3,5-dimethylbenzoyl)(methylamino))butyl)-1'-methyl-1-methanesulfonyl-spiro-indoline-3,4'-piperidinium iodide;

(v) 1'-(3-(S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl)-4-(N-(R or S)-(3-methylbenzoyl)(methylamino))pentyl)-1-methanesulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine);

10 (w) 1'-(3-(S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl)-4-(N-(R or S)-(3,5-bis(trifluoromethyl)benzoyl)(methylamino))pentyl)-1-methanesulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine);

(x) 1'-(3-(S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl)-4-(N-(R or S)-(3,5-dimethylbenzoyl)(methylamino))pentyl)-1-methanesulfonyl-spiro-indoline-3,4'-piperidine);

15 (y) 1'-(3-(S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl)-4-(N-(R or S)-(3,5-dichlorobenzoyl)(methylamino))pentyl)-1-methanesulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine);

20 (aa) 1'-(3-(S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3,5-difluorobenzoyl)(methylamino))butyl)-1-methanesulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine);

(ab) 1'-(3-(S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3-fluoro-5-(trifluoromethyl)benzoyl)(methylamino))butyl)-1-methanesulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine);

25 (ac) 1'-(3-(S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(1-naphthoyl)(methylamino))butyl)-1-methanesulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine);

30 (ad) 1'-(2-(S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-1-(N-(2-chlorophenylsulfonyl)-(methylamino))-4-butyl)-1-methylsulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine);

- 38 -

(ae) 1'-(2-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-1-(N-(3-chlorophenylsulfonyl)-(methylamino))-4-butyl)-1-methylsulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine);

5 (af) 1'-(2-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-1-(N-(4-chlorophenylsulfonyl)-(methylamino))-4-butyl)-1-methylsulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine);

(ag) 1'-(2-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-1-(N-(3,5-dichlorophenylsulfonyl)-(methylamino))-4-butyl)-1-methylsulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine);

10 (ah) 1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3-fluoro-5-(trifluoromethyl)benzoyl)(methylamino))butyl)-1-acetyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine);

(ai) 1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3,5-dimethylbenzoyl)(methylamino))butyl)-1-acetyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine).

15 (aj) 1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3-bromo-5-methylbenzoyl)(methylamino))butyl)-1-methanesulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine);

(ak) 1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3,5-dimethylbenzoyl)(methylamino))butyl)-1-(2-aminoacetyl)-spirop(indoline-3,4'-piperidine);

20 (al) 1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3,5-dimethylbenzoyl)(methylamino))butyl)-1-methyl-spiro(indol-2-one-3,4'-piperidine);

(am) 1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3,5-dichlorobenzoyl)(methylamino))butyl)-1-methyl-spiro(isoindol-1-one-3,4'-piperidine);

25 (an) 1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3,5-dimethylbenzoyl)(methylamino))butyl)-spirop(2-oxo-tetrahydroquinoline-4,4'-piperidine); and

30 (ao) 1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3,5-dichlorobenzoyl)(methylamino))butyl)-1-methyl-spirop(2-oxo-tetrahydroquinoline-4,4'-piperidine).

In an alternative embodiment the above compounds may be co-administered with a  $\beta$ 2-agonist such as Bambuterol, US 4,419,364 issued to Draco on 12/6/83; Bitolterol mesylate, US 4,138,581 issued to Sterling 2/6/79; Carbuterol, US 3,763,232 issued to SmithKline 10/2/73; 5 Clenbuterol, US 3,536,712 issued to Boehringer Ingelheim 10/27/70; Dopexamine, US 4,645,768 issued to Fisons 2/24/87; Formoterol, US 3,994,974 issued to Yamanouchi 11/30/76; Mabuterol, US 4,119,710 issued to Boehringer Ingelheim 10/10/78; Pirbuterol hydrochloride US 3,700,681 issued to Pfizer 10/24/72; Procaterol hydrochloride US 10 4,026,897 issued to Otsuka 5/31/77; Ritodrine hydrochloride US 3,410,944 issued to North American Philips 11/12/68; Brosaterol, US 4,276,299 issued to Zambon 6/30/81 and US 4,520,200 issued to Zambon 5/28/85; Cimaterol, US 4,407,819 issued to American Cyanamid 10/4/83; Docarpamine, US 4,228,183 issued to Tanabe 15 10/14/80; Salmeterol, US 4,992,474 issued to Glaxo 2/21/91 and US 5,091,422 issued to Glaxo 2/25/92.

The compounds of formula I are particularly useful in the treatment of diseases or conditions that are advantageously treated by concomitant antagonism of both NK1 and NK2 receptors or NK1, NK2 20 and NK3 receptors. These diseases include neuropathy, such as diabetic or peripheral neuropathy and chemotherapy-induced neuropathy; asthma; osteoarthritis; rheumatoid arthritis; and migraine.

In a second alternative embodiment the compounds of formula I may be co-administered with another NK1 or NK2 antagonist 25 such as those described in

Appln No. DO-139125, filed 08-Jun-78, Pub. 12-Dec-79; Appln No. EP-82568, filed 22-Dec-81, Pub. 29-Jun-83; Appln No. EP-490379, filed 13-Dec-90, Pub. 17-Jun-92; Appln No. EP-353732, filed 05-Aug-88, Pub. 07-Feb-90; Appln No. EP-161007, filed 13-Jan-84, Pub. 13-Nov-85; Appln No. EP-385-43, filed 28-Feb-89, Pub. 05-Sep-90; Appln 30 No. WO8301251, filed 09-Oct-81, Pub. 14-Apr-83; Appln No. BE-894602, filed 09-Oct-81, Pub. 31-Jan-83; Appln No. DE3205991, filed 19-Feb-82, Pub. 01-Sep-83; Appln No. EP-327009, filed 02-Feb-88, Pub. 09-Aug-89; Appln No. EP-336230, filed 05-Apr-88, Pub. 11-Oct-

- 40 -

89; Appln No. 394989, filed 28-Apr-89, Pub. 31-Oct-90; Appln No. AU9068010, filed 22-Dec-89, Pub. 27-Jun-91; Appln No. EP-482539, filed 24-Oct-90, Pub. 29-Apr-92; Appln No. EP-443132, filed 10-Dec-90, Pub. 28-Aug-91; Appln No. EP-498069, filed 21-Dec-90, Pub. 12-Aug-92; Appln No. WO9222569, filed 19-Jun-91, Pub. 23-Dec-92; Appln No. JO4297492, filed 24-Oct-91, Pub. 21-Oct-92; Appln No. US4997853, filed 02-Dec-88, Pub. 05-Mar-91; Appln No. EP-272929, filed 24-Dec-86, Pub. 29-Jun-88; Appln No. EP-360390, filed 25-Jul-88, Pub. 28-Mar-90; Appln No. US3862114, filed 22-Nov-71, Pub. 21-Jan-75; Appln No. EP-219258, filed 30-Sep-85, Pub. 22-Apr-87, Appln No. US4742156, filed 30-Sep-85, Pub. 03-May-88; Appln No. EP-401177, filed 29-May-89, Pub. 05-Dec-90; Appln No. WO9202546, filed 03-Aug-90, Pub. 20-Feb-92; Appln No. EP-176436, filed 26-Sep-84, Pub. 02-Apr-86; Appln No. US4680283, filed 26-Sep-84, Pub. 14-Jul-87; Appln No. WO9220661, filed 22-May-91, Pub. 26-Nov-92; Appln No. EP-520555, filed 24-Jun-91, Pub. 30-Dec-92; Appln No. EP-347802, filed 20-Jun-88, Pub. 27-Dec-89; Appln No. EP-412542, filed 10-Aug-89, Pub. 13-Feb-91; Appln No. WO9005729, filed 23-Nov-88, Pub. 31-May-90; Appln No. WO9005525, filed 23-Nov-88, Pub. 31-May-90; Appln No. EP-436334, filed 04-Jan-90, Pub. 10-Jul-91; Appln No. WO9118878, filed 31-May-90, Pub. 12-Dec-91; Appln No. WO9118899, filed 01-Jun-90, Pub. 12-Dec-91; Appln No. WO9201688, filed 23-Jul-90, Pub. 06-Feb-92; Appln No. WO9206079, filed 28-Sep-90, Pub. 16-Apr-92; Appln No. WO9212152, filed 03-Jan-91, Pub. 23-Jul-92; Appln No. WO9212151, filed 10-Jan-91, Pub. 23-Jul-92; WO9215585, filed 01-Mar-91, Pub. 29-Apr-92; Appln No. WO022-676, filed 22-May-91, Pub. 26-Nov-92; Appln No. WO9221677, filed 31-May-91, Pub. 10-Dec-92; Appln No. WO9300331, filed 20-Jun-91, Pub. 07-Jun-93; Appln No. WO9300330, filed 21-Jun-91, Pub. 07-Jan-93; Appln No. WO9109844, filed 11-Jul-91, Pub. 11-Jul-91; Appln No. EP-429366, filed 23-Nov-89, Pub. 29-May-91; Appln No. EP-430771, filed 23-Nov-89, Pub. 05-Jun-91; Appln No. EP-514274, filed 17-May-91, Pub. 19-Nov-92; Appln No. EP-514276, filed 17-May-91, Pub. 19-Nov-92; Appln No. EP-514275,

- 41 -

filed 17-May-91, Pub. 19-Nov-92; Appln No. EP-514273, filed 17-May-91, Pub. 19-Nov-92; Appln No. EP-428434, filed 06-Nov-89, Pub. 22-May-91; Appln No. EP-474561, filed 09-May-90, Pub. 11-Mar-92; Appln No. EP-512901, filed 03-May-91, Pub. 11-Nov-92; Appln No. 5 EP-512902, filed 03-May-91, Pub. 11-Nov-92; Appln No. EP-515240, filed 03-May-91, Pub. 25-Nov-92; Appln No. US4472305, filed 17-May-83, Pub. 18-Sep-84; Appln No. US4839465, filed 20-Jan-87, Pub. 13-Jun-89; Appln No. EP-101929, filed 28-Jul-82, Pub. 07-Mar-84; Appln No. WO9102745, filed 16-Aug-89, Pub. 07-Mar-91; Appln No. 10 US3912711, filed 03-Jul-72, Pub. 14-Oct-75; Appln No. US4059693, filed 11-Jun-76, Pub. 22-Nov-77; Appln No. US4481139, filed 13-Apr-83, Pub. 06-Nov-84; Appln No. US7358073, filed 24-Oct-88, Pub. 19-Dec-89; Appln No. US7261627, filed 24-Oct-88, Pub. 07-Mar-89, which are hereby incorporated by reference.

15

The compounds of formula I are useful in the prevention and treatment of a wide variety of clinical conditions (as detailed in this specification) which are characterized by overstimulation of the tachykinin receptors, in particular NK1, NK2 and NK3.

20

These conditions may include disorders of the central nervous system such as anxiety, depression, psychosis and schizophrenia; neurodegenerative disorders such as AIDS related dementia, senile dementia of the Alzheimer type, Alzheimer's disease and Down's syndrome; demyelinating diseases such as multiple sclerosis and amyotrophic lateral sclerosis and other neuropathological disorders such as diabetic or peripheral neuropathy, AIDS related neuropathy, chemotherapy-induced neuropathy, and neuralgia; respiratory diseases such as chronic obstructive airways disease, bronchopneumonia, bronchospasm and asthma; inflammatory diseases such as inflammatory bowel disease, psoriasis, fibrositis, osteoarthritis and rheumatoid arthritis; allergies such as eczema and rhinitis; hypersensitivity disorders such as poison ivy; ophthalmic diseases such as conjunctivitis, vernal conjunctivitis, and the like; cutaneous diseases such as contact dermatitis, atopic dermatitis, urticaria, and other eczematoid dermatitis;

25

30

- 42 -

addiction disorders such as alcoholism; stress related somatic disorders; reflex sympathetic dystrophy such as shoulder/hand syndrome; dysthymic disorders; adverse immunological reactions such as rejection of transplanted tissues and disorders related to immune enhancement or suppression such as systemic lupus erythematosis; gastrointestinal (GI) disorders and diseases of the GI tract such as disorders associated with the neuronal control of viscera such as ulcerative colitis, Crohn's disease and incontinence; disorders of bladder function; fibrosing and collagen diseases such as scleroderma and eosinophilic fascioliasis; disorders of blood flow caused by vasodilation and vasospastic diseases such as angina, migraine and Reynaud's disease; and pain or nociception, for example, that is attributable to or associated with any of the foregoing conditions especially the transmission of pain in migraine. Hence, these compounds are readily adapted to therapeutic use for the treatment of physiological disorders associated with the overstimulation of the tachykinin receptors, in particular NK1, NK2 and NK3.

The compounds of the present invention are particularly useful in the treatment of pain or nociception and/or inflammation and disorders associated therewith such as, for example: neuropathy, such as diabetic or peripheral neuropathy and chemotherapy-induced neuropathy; asthma; osteoarthritis; rheumatoid arthritis; and migraine.

For the treatment of any of these diseases compounds of **Formula I** may be administered orally, topically, parenterally, ICV, by inhalation spray or rectally in dosage unit formulations containing conventional non-toxic pharmaceutically acceptable carriers, adjuvants and vehicles. The term parenteral as used herein includes subcutaneous injections, intravenous, intramuscular, intracisternal injection or infusion techniques. In addition to the treatment of warm-blooded animals such as mice, rats, horses, cattle, sheep, dogs, cats, etc., the compounds of the invention are effective in the treatment of humans.

The pharmaceutical compositions containing the active ingredient may be in a form suitable for oral use, for example, as tablets, troches, lozenges, aqueous or oily suspensions, dispersible powders or granules, emulsions, hard or soft capsules, or syrups or

- 43 -

elixirs. Compositions intended for oral use may be prepared according to any method known to the art for the manufacture of pharmaceutical compositions and such compositions may contain one or more agents selected from the group consisting of sweetening agents, flavoring agents, coloring agents and preserving agents in order to provide pharmaceutically elegant and palatable preparations. Tablets contain the active ingredient in admixture with non-toxic pharmaceutically acceptable excipients which are suitable for the manufacture of tablets. These excipients may be for example, inert diluents, such as calcium carbonate, sodium carbonate, lactose, calcium phosphate or sodium phosphate; granulating and disintegrating agents, for example, corn starch, or alginic acid; binding agents, for example starch, gelatin or acacia, and lubricating agents, for example magnesium stearate, stearic acid or talc. The tablets may be uncoated or they may be coated by known techniques to delay disintegration and absorption in the gastrointestinal tract and thereby provide a sustained action over a longer period. For example, a time delay material such as glyceryl monostearate or glyceryl distearate may be employed. They may also be coated by the techniques described in the U.S. Patents 4,256,108; 4,166,452; and 4,265,874 to form osmotic therapeutic tablets for control release.

Formulations for oral use may also be presented as hard gelatin capsules wherein the active ingredient is mixed with an inert solid diluent, for example, calcium carbonate, calcium phosphate or kaolin, or as soft gelatin capsules wherein the active ingredient is mixed with water or an oil medium, for example peanut oil, liquid paraffin, or olive oil.

Aqueous suspensions contain the active materials in admixture with excipients suitable for the manufacture of aqueous suspensions. Such excipients are suspending agents, for example sodium carboxymethylcellulose, methylcellulose, hydroxy-propylmethylcellulose, sodium alginate, polyvinyl- pyrrolidone, gum tragacanth and gum acacia; dispersing or wetting agents may be a naturally-occurring phosphatide, for example lecithin, or condensation products of an

alkylene oxide with fatty acids, for example polyoxyethylene stearate, or condensation products of ethylene oxide with long chain aliphatic alcohols, for example heptadecaethyleneoxycetanol, or condensation products of ethylene oxide with partial esters derived from fatty acids and a hexitol such as polyoxyethylene sorbitol monooleate, or condensation products of ethylene oxide with partial esters derived from fatty acids and hexitol anhydrides, for example polyethylene sorbitan monooleate. The aqueous suspensions may also contain one or more preservatives, for example ethyl, or n-propyl, p-hydroxybenzoate, one or more coloring agents, one or more flavoring agents, and one or more sweetening agents, such as sucrose or saccharin.

Oily suspensions may be formulated by suspending the active ingredient in a vegetable oil, for example arachis oil, olive oil, sesame oil or coconut oil, or in a mineral oil such as liquid paraffin. The oily suspensions may contain a thickening agent, for example beeswax, hard paraffin or cetyl alcohol. Sweetening agents such as those set forth above, and flavoring agents may be added to provide a palatable oral preparation. These compositions may be preserved by the addition of an anti-oxidant such as ascorbic acid.

Dispersible powders and granules suitable for preparation of an aqueous suspension by the addition of water provide the active ingredient in admixture with a dispersing or wetting agent, suspending agent and one or more preservatives. Suitable dispersing or wetting agents and suspending agents are exemplified by those already mentioned above. Additional excipients, for example sweetening, flavoring and coloring agents, may also be present.

The pharmaceutical compositions of the invention may also be in the form of oil-in-water emulsions. The oily phase may be a vegetable oil, for example olive oil or arachis oil, or a mineral oil, for example liquid paraffin or mixtures of these. Suitable emulsifying agents may be naturally-occurring gums, for example gum acacia or gum tragacanth, naturally-occurring phosphatides, for example soy bean, lecithin, and esters or partial esters derived from fatty acids and hexitol anhydrides, for example sorbitan monooleate, and condensation

- 45 -

products of the said partial esters with ethylene oxide, for example polyoxyethylene sorbitan monooleate. The emulsions may also contain sweetening and flavoring agents.

5       Syrups and elixirs may be formulated with sweetening agents, for example glycerol, propylene glycol, sorbitol or sucrose. Such formulations may also contain a demulcent, a preservative and flavoring and coloring agents. The pharmaceutical compositions may be in the form of a sterile injectable aqueous or oleagenous suspension. This suspension may be formulated according to the known art using 10 those suitable dispersing or wetting agents and suspending agents which have been mentioned above. The sterile injectable preparation may also be a sterile injectable solution or suspension in a non-toxic parenterally-acceptable diluent or solvent, for example as a solution in 1,3-butane 15 diol. Among the acceptable vehicles and solvents that may be employed are water, Ringer's solution and isotonic sodium chloride solution. In addition, sterile, fixed oils are conventionally employed as a solvent or suspending medium. For this purpose any bland fixed oil may be employed including synthetic mono- or diglycerides. In addition, fatty acids such as oleic acid find use in the preparation of injectables.

20       The compounds of formula I may also be administered in the form of suppositories for rectal administration of the drug. These compositions can be prepared by mixing the drug with a suitable non-irritating excipient which is solid at ordinary temperatures but liquid at the rectal temperature and will therefore melt in the rectum to release 25 the drug. Such materials are cocoa butter and polyethylene glycols.

For topical use, creams, ointments, jellies, solutions or suspensions, etc., containing the compounds of Formula I are employed. (For purposes of this application, topical application shall include mouth washes and gargles.)

30       In the treatment of a condition associated with an excess of tachykinins, an appropriate dosage level will generally be about 0.001 to 50 mg per kg patient body weight per day which can be administered in single or multiple doses. Preferably, the dosage level will be about 0.01 to about 25 mg/kg per day; more preferably about 0.05 to about 10

- 46 -

mg/kg per day. A suitable dosage level may be about 0.001 to 25 mg/kg per day, about 0.005 to 10 mg/kg per day, or about 0.005 to 5 mg/kg per day. Within this range the dosage may be 0.005 to 0.05, 0.05 to 0.5 or 0.5 to 5.0 mg/kg per day. The compounds may be administered on a regimen of 1 to 4 times per day, preferably once or twice per day.

#### TACHYKININ ANTAGONISM ASSAY

10 The compounds of this invention are useful for antagonizing tachykinins, in particular substance P and neurokinin A in the treatment of gastrointestinal disorders, central nervous system disorders, inflammatory diseases, pain or migraine and asthma in a mammal in need of such treatment. This activity can be demonstrated by the following assay.

15

##### A. Receptor Expression in COS

20 To express the cloned human neurokinin-1 receptor (NK1R) transiently in COS, the cDNA for the human NK1R was cloned into the expression vector pCDM9 which was derived from pCDM8 (INVITROGEN) by inserting the ampicillin resistance gene (nucleotide 1973 to 2964 from BLUESCRIPT SK+) into the Sac II site.

25 Transfection of 20 µg of the plasmid DNA into 10 million COS cells was achieved by electroporation in 800 µl of transfection buffer (135 mM NaCl, 1.2 mM CaCl<sub>2</sub>, 1.2 mM MgCl<sub>2</sub>, 2.4 mM K<sub>2</sub>HPO<sub>4</sub>, 0.6 mM KH<sub>2</sub>PO<sub>4</sub>, 10 mM glucose, 10 mM HEPES pH 7.4) at 260 V and 950 uF using the IBI GENEZAPPER (IBI, New Haven, CT). The cells were incubated in 10% fetal calf serum, 2 mM glutamine, 100U/ml penicillin-streptomycin, and 90% DMEM media (GIBCO, Grand Island, NY) in 5% CO<sub>2</sub> at 37°C for three days before the binding assay.

30

Similar methods were used to express the NK2 receptor.

- 47 -

**B. Stable Expression in CHO**

To establish a stable cell line expressing the cloned human NK1R, the cDNA was subcloned into the vector pRcCMV (INVITROGEN). Transfection of 20 µg of the plasmid DNA into CHO cells was achieved by electroporation in 800 µl of transfection buffer supplemented with 0.625 mg/ml Herring sperm DNA at 300 V and 950 uF using the IBI GENEZAPPER (IBI). The transfected cells were incubated in CHO media (10% fetal calf serum, 100 U/ml penicillin-streptomycin, 2 mM glutamine, 1/500 hypoxanthine-thymidine (ATCC), 90% IMDM media (JRH BIOSCIENCES, Lenexa, KS), 0.7 mg/ml G418 (GIBCO)) in 5% CO<sub>2</sub> at 37°C until colonies were visible. Each colony was separated and propagated. The cell clone with the highest number of human NK1R was selected for subsequent applications such as drug screening.

15      Similar methods were used to express the human NK2 receptor.

**C. Assay Protocol using COS or CHO**

The binding assay of human NK1R expressed in either COS or CHO cells is based on the use of <sup>125</sup>I-substance P (<sup>125</sup>I-SP, from 20 DU PONT, Boston, MA) as a radioactively labeled ligand which competes with unlabeled substance P or any other ligand for binding to the human NK1R. Monolayer cell cultures of COS or CHO were dissociated by the non-enzymatic solution (SPECIALTY MEDIA, Lavallette, NJ) and resuspended in appropriate volume of the binding 25 buffer (50 mM Tris pH 7.5, 5 mM MnCl<sub>2</sub>, 150 mM NaCl, 0.04 mg/ml bacitracin, 0.004 mg/ml leupeptin, 0.02 mg/ml BSA, 0.01 mM phosphoramidon) such that 200 µl of the cell suspension would give rise to about 10,000 cpm of specific <sup>125</sup>I-SP binding (approximately 50,000 to 200,000 cells). In the binding assay, 500 µl of cells were added to a 30 tube containing 20 µl of 1.5 to 0.25 nM of <sup>125</sup>I-SP and 5 µl of unlabeled substance P or any other test compound in DMSO. The tubes were incubated at 4°C or at room temperature for 1 hour with gentle shaking. The bound radioactivity was separated from unbound radioactivity by GF/C filter (BRANDEL, Gaithersburg, MD) which was

- 48 -

pre-wetted with 0.1% polyethylenimine. The filter was washed with 3 ml of wash buffer (50 mM Tris pH 7.5, 5 mM MnCl<sub>2</sub>, 150 mM NaCl) three times and its radioactivity was determined by gamma counter. A similar assay was used for NK2 except <sup>125</sup>I-NKA was used as the ligand.

The activation of phospholipase C by NK1R may also be measured in CHO cells expressing the human NK1R by determining the accumulation of inositol monophosphate which is a degradation product of IP<sub>3</sub>. CHO cells are seeded in 12-well plate at 250,000 cells per well. After incubating in CHO media for 4 days, cells are loaded with 0.025 uCi/ml of <sup>3</sup>H-myoinositol by overnight incubation. The extracellular radioactivity is removed by washing with phosphate buffered saline. LiCl is added to the well at final concentration of 0.1 mM with or without the test compound, and incubation is continued at 37°C for 15 min. Substance P is added to the well at final concentration of 0.3 nM to activate the human NK1R. After 30 min of incubation at 37°C, the media is removed and 0.1 N HCl is added. Each well is sonicated at 4°C and extracted with CHCl<sub>3</sub>/methanol (1:1). The aqueous phase is applied to a 1 ml Dowex AG 1X8 ion exchange column. The column is washed with 0.1 N formic acid followed by 0.025 M ammonium formate-0.1 N formic acid. The inositol monophosphate is eluted with 0.2 M ammonium formate-0.1 N formic acid and quantitated by beta counter. Similar methods were used to assess antagonism at the NK2 receptor, except NKA was used as the stimulating agonist.

The compounds of of Formula I as Exemplified in the EXAMPLES below have been found to displace radioactive ligand for the NK-1 receptor at a concentration range of 0.01 nM to 1.0 μM, for the NK-2 receptor, 0.01 nM to 5 μM, and for the NK-3 receptor, 1.0 nM to 10 μM.

Several methods for preparing the compounds of this invention are illustrated in the following Schemes and Examples.

The compounds of the present invention are prepared by alkylating azacycle **1**, in which R<sub>1</sub> = H, under appropriate conditions (Scheme 1). The required azacycle starting materials are prepared

using methods described in the literature; such as described in Ong, H. H. *et al*, *Journal of Medicinal Chemistry*, 1983,26, 981-986, and Nargund, R. *et al*, USSN 08/147,226 (November 3, 1993), EP 93309867.5 hereby incorporated by reference. None of the compounds in these references are claimed to be neurokinin antagonists.

5        Thus, azacycle 1 (R1=H) is combined with the appropriate aldehyde and the intermediate imine is reduced to the tertiary amine chemically (e.g. using sodium cyanoborohydride) or catalytically (e.g. using hydrogen and palladium on carbon or Raney nickel catalyst) (Scheme 1). The aldehyde needed for this reaction can be prepared by 10 methods generally known in the chemical literature; for the purposes of the present invention the preparation of a representative aldehyde is described in Hale, J.J.; Finke, P.E.; MacCoss, M. *Bioorganic & Medicinal Chemistry Letters* 1993,3, 319-322.

15        In an alternative embodiment of the present invention, azacycle 1 (R1=H) can be alkylated with an alkyl halide or alkyl sulfonate ester (with or without an added base to neutralize the mineral acid or sulfonic acid by-product) to give the desired compound (Scheme 1). The alkyl halide or alkyl sulfonate needed for this 20 reaction can be prepared by methods generally known in the chemical literature; for the purposes of the present invention an aldehyde, prepared as described above, can be reduced to an alcohol with sodium borohydride, diisobutylaluminum hydride or lithium aluminum hydride, and the product alcohol converted to either the alkyl halide using methods described in March J. "Advanced Organic Chemistry", 25 3rd ed., John Wiley & Sons, New York, pp. 382-384 (1985), or alkyl sulfonate ester using methods described in March J. "Advanced Organic Chemistry", 3rd ed., John Wiley & Sons, New York, p. 444 (1985).

30        In an alternative embodiment of the present invention, 1 (R1 = H) can be acylated to give the tertiary amide and subsequent reduction with a strong reducing agent (e.g. diborane including borane dimethylsulfide; and, lithium aluminum hydride) will give the desired compound (Scheme 1). The acylating agent needed for this reaction can be prepared by methods generally known in the chemical literature; for

- 50 -

the purposes of the present invention an aldehyde, prepared as described above, can be oxidized using such commonly used reagents as permanganate in acid or silver oxide, and the resulting acid activated as an acid chloride or mixed anhydride which can be used to acylate I (R<sub>1</sub> = H). The product amide can in and of itself be a neurokinin antagonist or can be reduced with a strong reducing agent, such as diborane or lithium aluminum hydride, to give the tertiary amine.

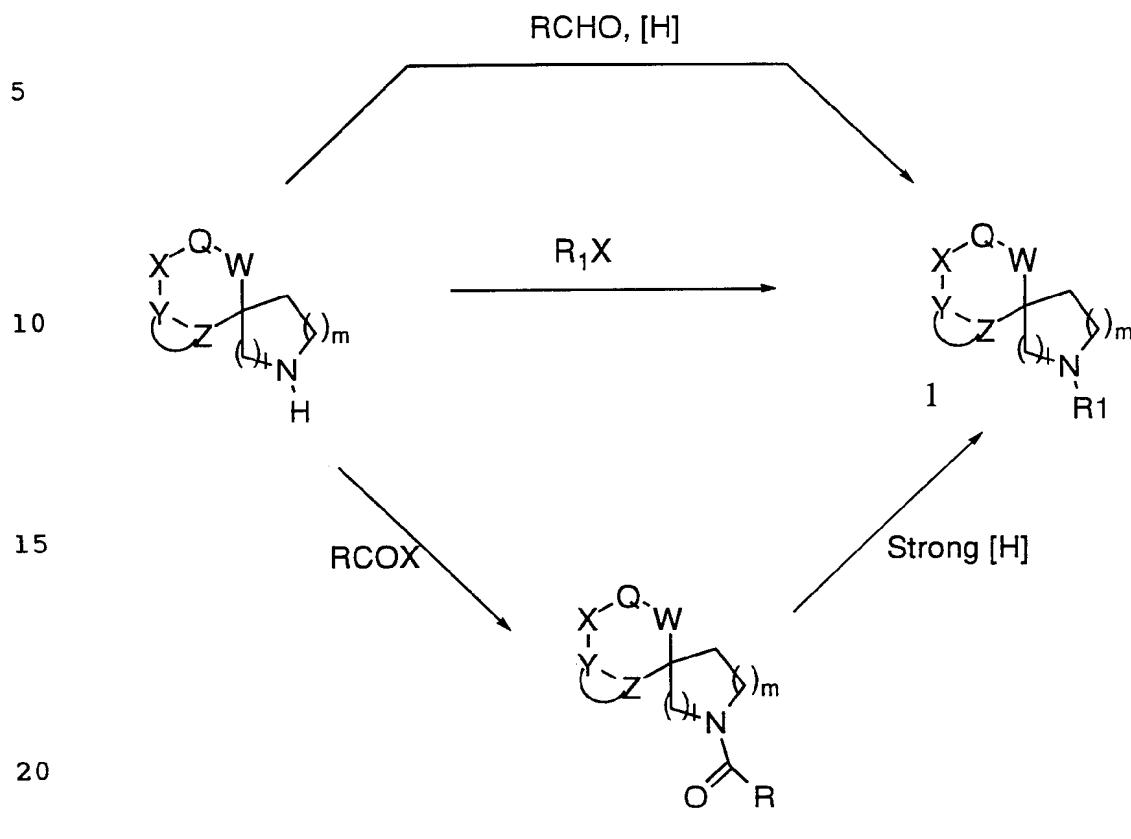
Optionally, compound 1 formed in the alkylation step may be further modified in subsequent reactions. In one illustration of such an approach, the aldehyde fragment contained a t-butoxycarbonylamino group (Example 2). After reductive amination, the t-butoxycarbonyl protecting group is removed by treatment with a strong acid such as trifluoroacetic acid or formic acid and the resulting amine is acylated to furnish the desired compounds (Example 3). Alternatively, the protecting group may also be present in the azacycle portion as illustrated with a benzyloxycarbonyl group in Example 6. Thus an azacycle containing a benzyloxycarbonylindoline (prepared in Example 4) is alkylated with an aldehyde in the presence of a reducing agent. Next, the protecting group is removed to liberate a free amine (Example 7) and the amine is further reacted to provide additional analogs (Example 8).

25

30

- 51 -

SCHEME 1



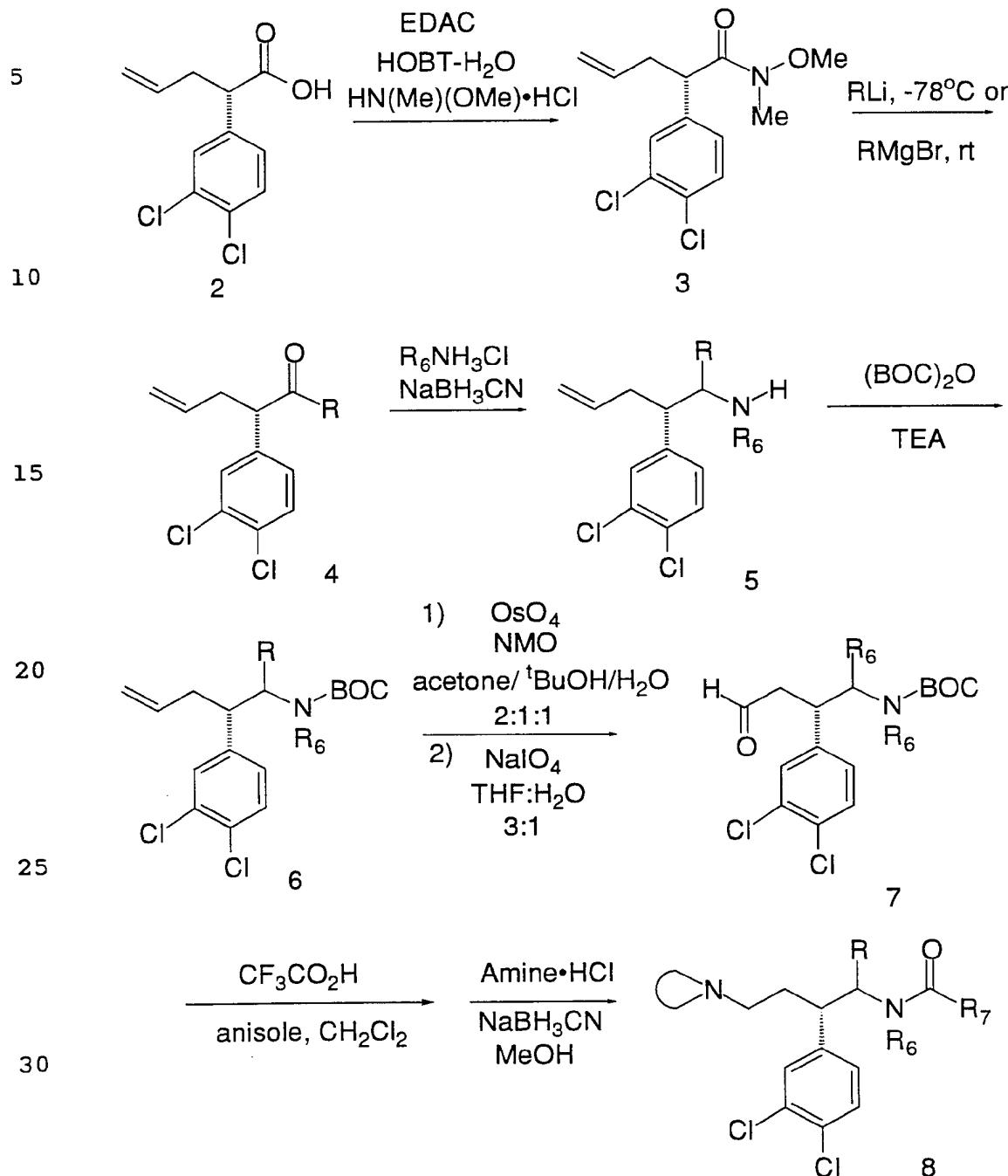
- 52 -

In an alternative embodiment of the present invention, the allyl acid **2** (described in Hale *et al*; see above) can be converted into the N-methyl methoxy amide **3**, which is then treated with an alkyl or aryl metal reagent, for example methyllithium or butyllithium, to provide the ketone **4** (Scheme 2). The ketone can be converted into an imine which can then be reduced to secondary amine **5** chemically, (e.g using sodium cyanoborohydride or sodium borohydride), or catalytically (e.g. using hydrogen and palladium on carbon or Raney nickel catalyst).  
Acylation under standard conditions, for example with an acid chloride, provides amide **6**. The allyl group in **6** can be oxidatively cleaved to aldehyde **7** with osmium tetroxide followed by sodium periodate or with ozone at low temperature. Reductive amination of aldehyde **7** with azacycle **1** can then be carried out under the conditions described above.

Substituted spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine) derivatives can be prepared as shown in Scheme 3 starting from the appropriately substituted phenylhydrazines. Following the Fischer indole reaction and reduction of the intermediate imine with a mild reducing agent such as sodium borohydride, the indoline nitrogen can be reacted with an electrophile such as an acyl chloride or a sulfonyl chloride. The protecting group on the piperidine nitrogen, for example a benzyloxycarbonyl group, can be removed by treatment with hydrogen in the presence of palladium on carbon or by exposure to trimethylsilyl iodide, to give the deprotected substituted spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine).  
25

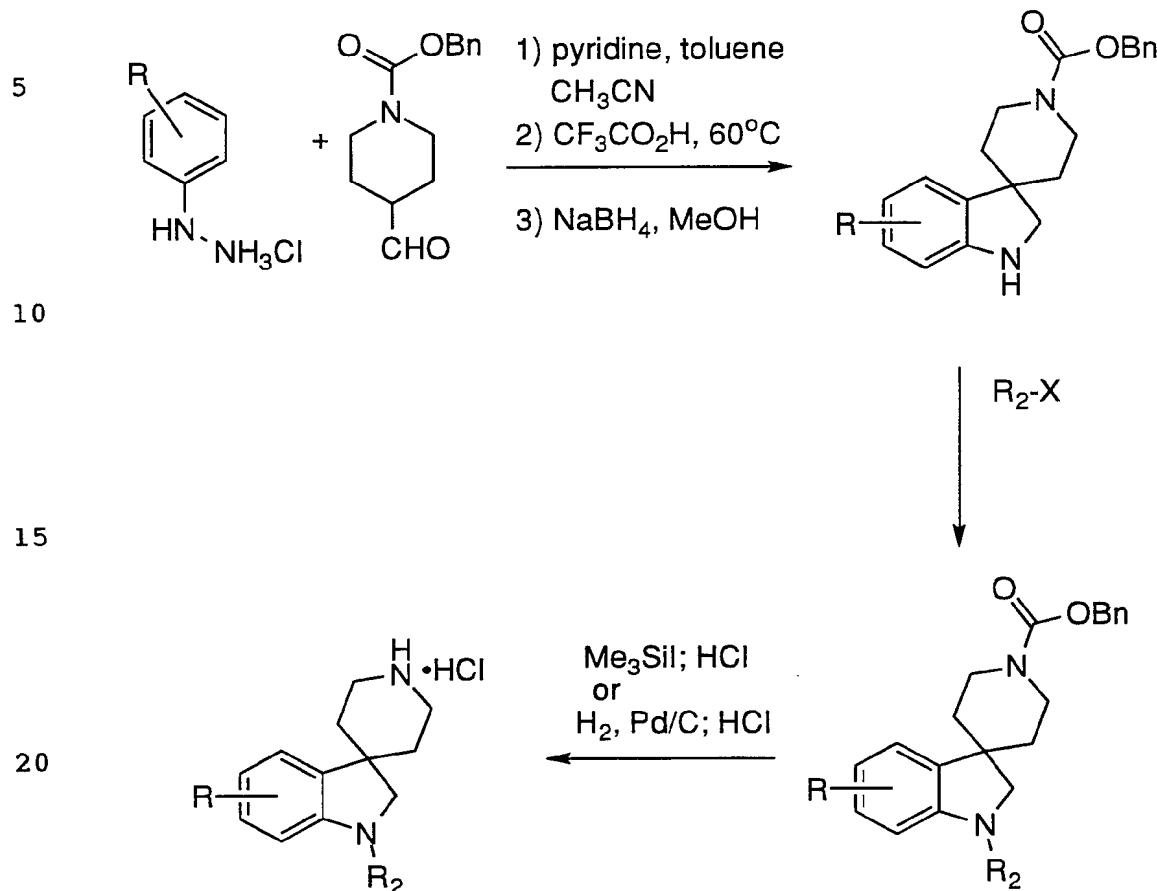
- 53 -

### SCHEME 2



- 54 -

## SCHEME 3



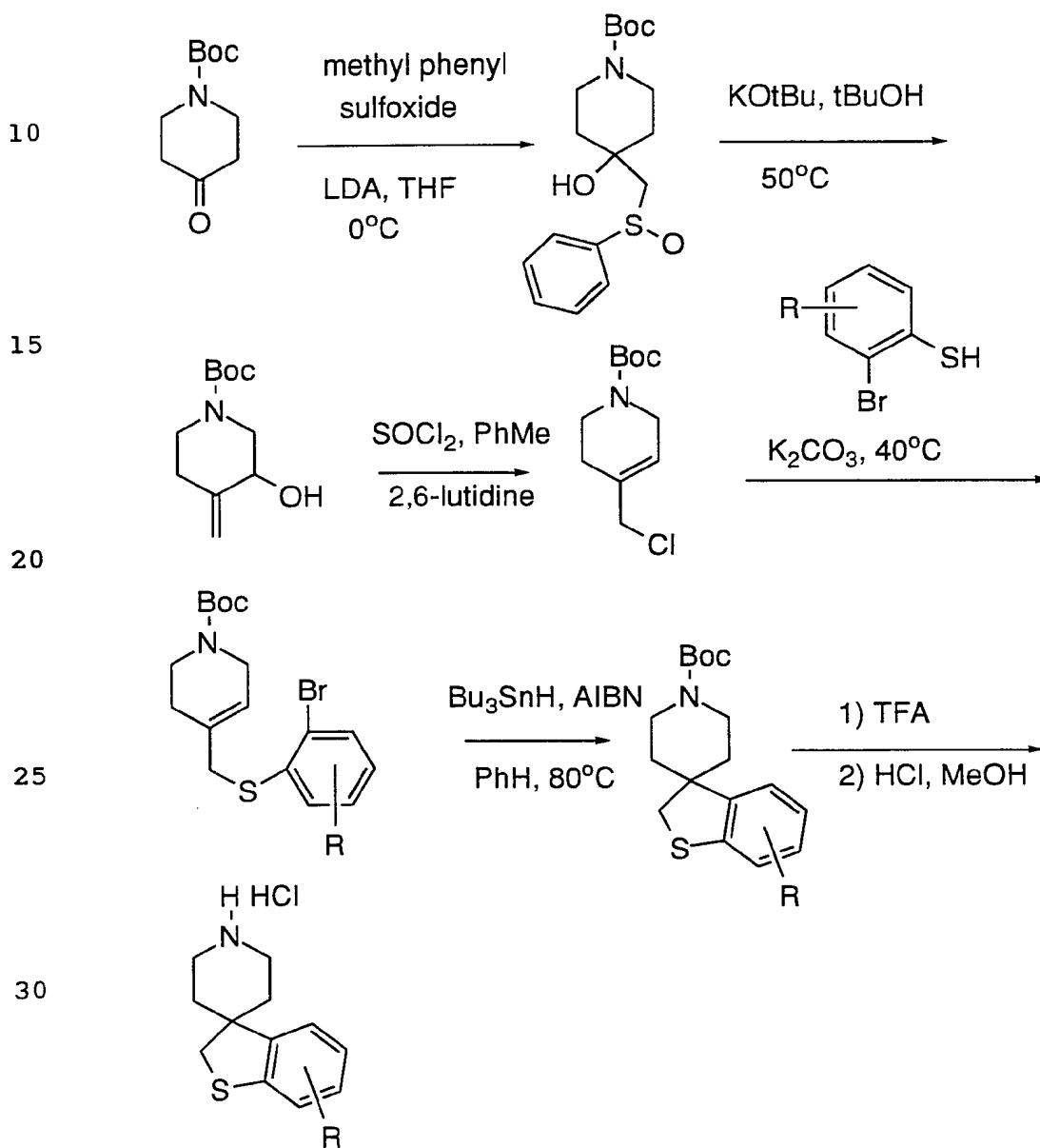
Preparation of spiro(2,3-dihydrobenzothiophene-3,4'-piperidine) derivatives is shown in Scheme 4. Reaction of N-Boc protected 4-piperidone with the lithium salt of methyl phenyl sulfoxide followed by base-mediated elimination-rearrangement and basic cleavage provides the indicated allylic alcohol. The alcohol can be converted to the rearranged allylic chloride with thionyl chloride in toluene in the presence of 2,6-lutidine as a proton scavenger. Displacement of the chloride with functionalized 2-bromothiophenol provides the allylic sulfide, which can be cyclized under radical conditions to give the illustrated spiro(2,3-dihydrobenzothiophene-3,4'-piperidine).

- 55 -

piperidine). Cleavage of the t-butoxycarbonyl group under standard conditions, such as trifluoroacetic acid, then provides the desired spirocycle.

5

SCHEME 4



- 56 -

Spiro(2,3-dihydrobenzofuran-3,4'-piperidine) derivatives can be prepared as illustrated in Scheme 5. Treatment of an appropriately substituted ester of 2-fluorophenylacetate with mechlorethamine hydrochloride under basic conditions provides the 5 piperidine product, which on treatment with a strong reducing agent such as lithium aluminum hydride produces the corresponding 4-(hydroxymethyl) compound. Cyclization with base provides the benzofuran derivative, and cleavage of the N-methyl group can then be carried out using 1-chloroethyl chloroformate or other suitable N-  
10 demethylating agents.

SCHEME 5

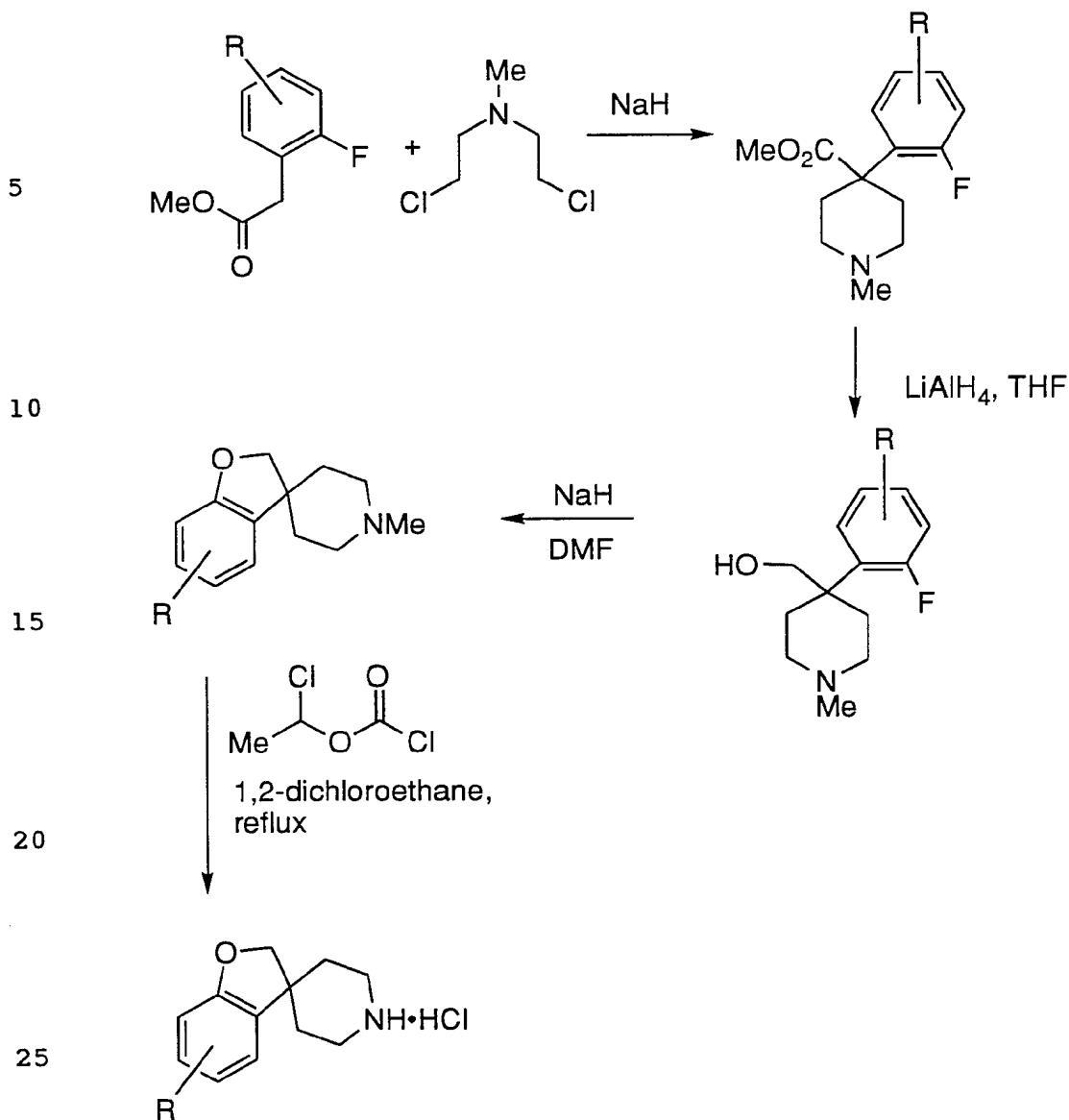
15

20

25

30

- 57 -



Compounds with alternate arrangements of the amide bond can be prepared as shown in Scheme 6. The illustrated acid can be homologated under Arndt-Eistert conditions to give the chain-extended acid, which can be derivatized under standard acylating conditions with, for example, an aniline derivative, to give the corresponding amide. Oxidative cleavage of the olefin with osmium tetroxide or ozone then

- 58 -

provides the aldehyde intermediate suitable for coupling as described earlier.

5

10

15

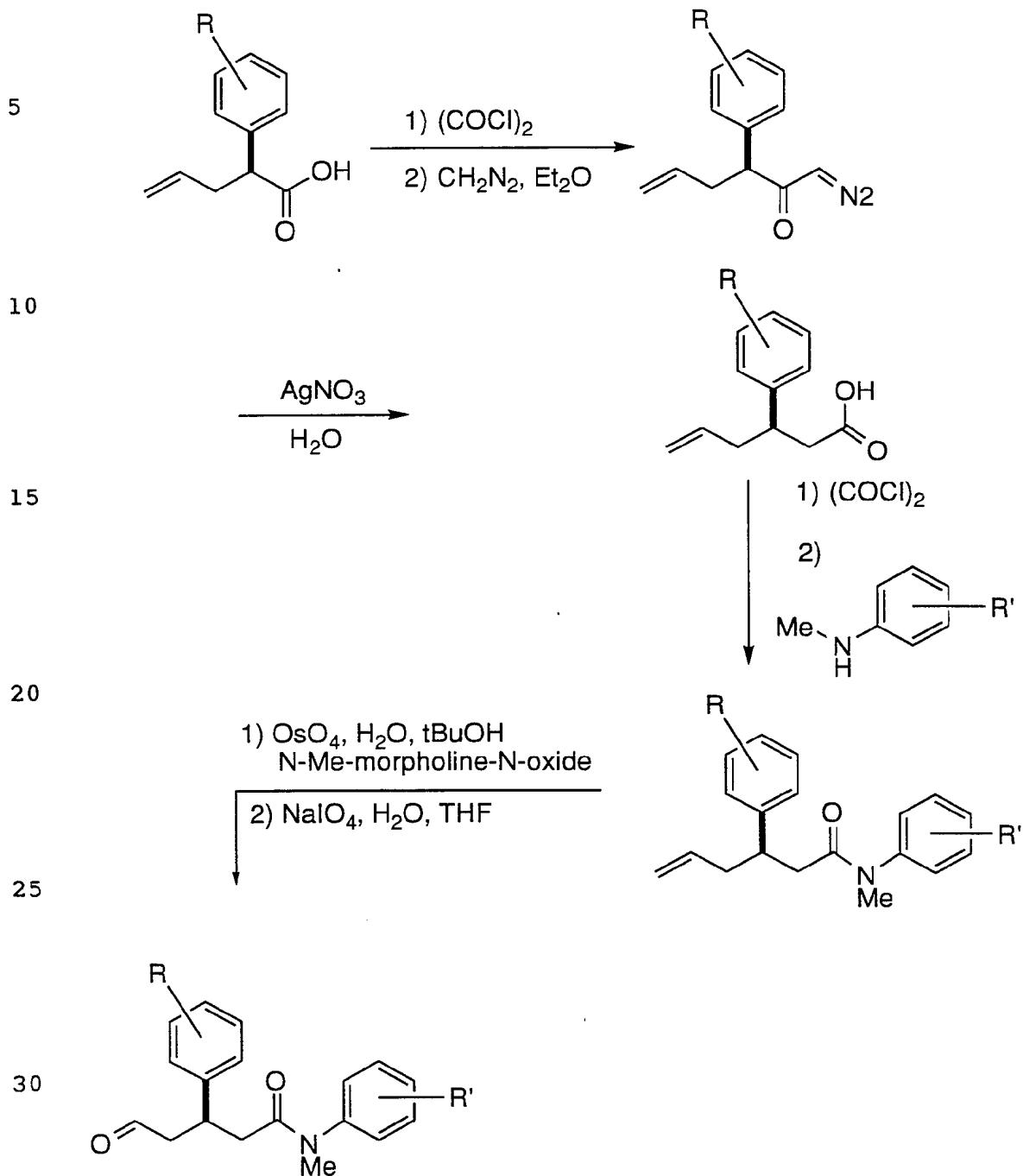
20

25

30

- 59 -

## SCHEME 6



- 60 -

In addition, ketone derivatives can be prepared by an extension of the chemistry given above, as shown in Scheme 7. A second Arndt-Eistert chain extension provides the illustrated heptenoic acid derivative, which after conversion into its N-methoxy-N-methyl amide, can be reacted with an aryl organometallic reagent, such as an aryl magnesium bromide, to provide the ketone. Routine oxidative cleavage then gives the desired aldehyde, which can be coupled with a spiro-piperidine derivative as described above.

10

SCHEME 7

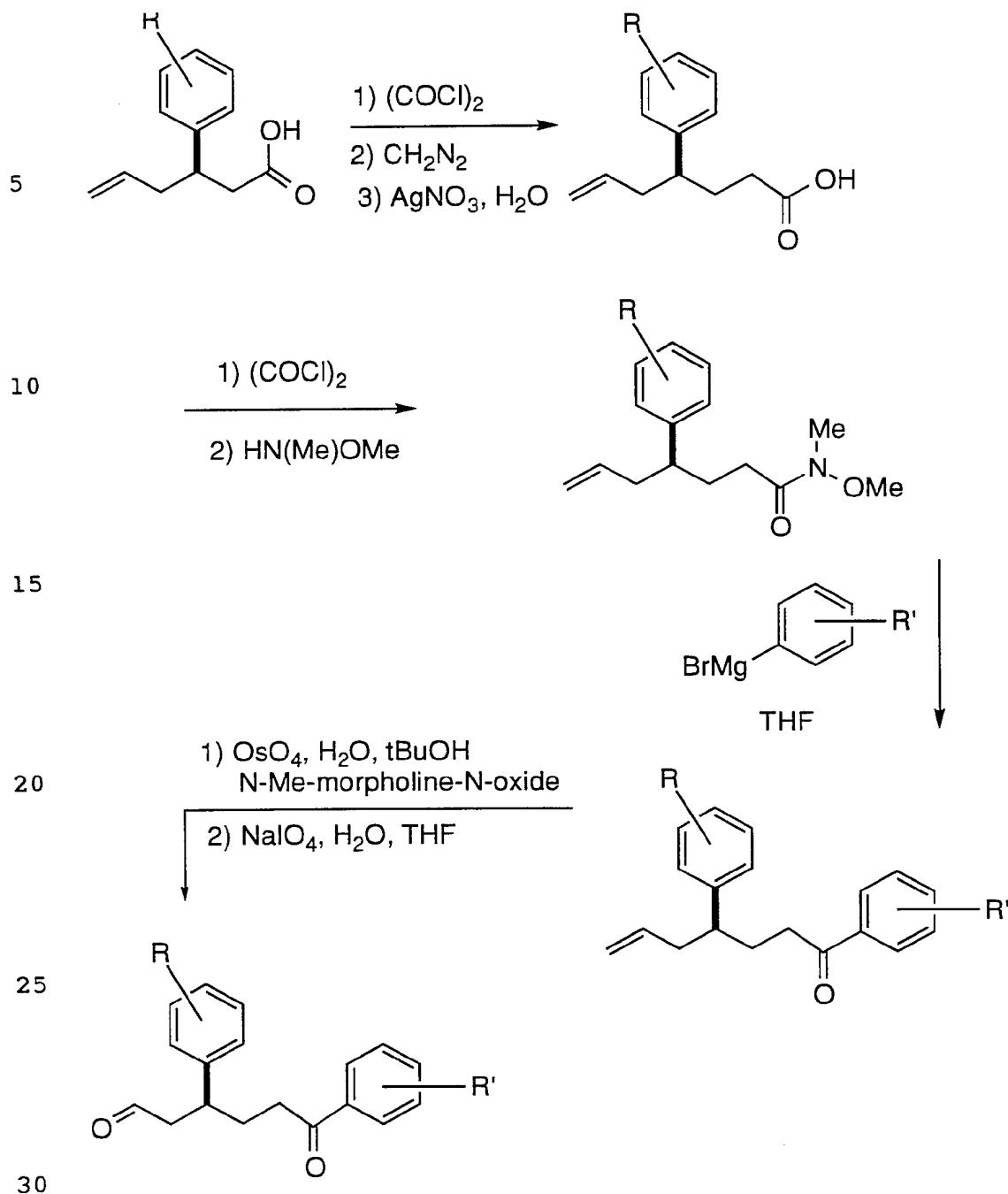
15

20

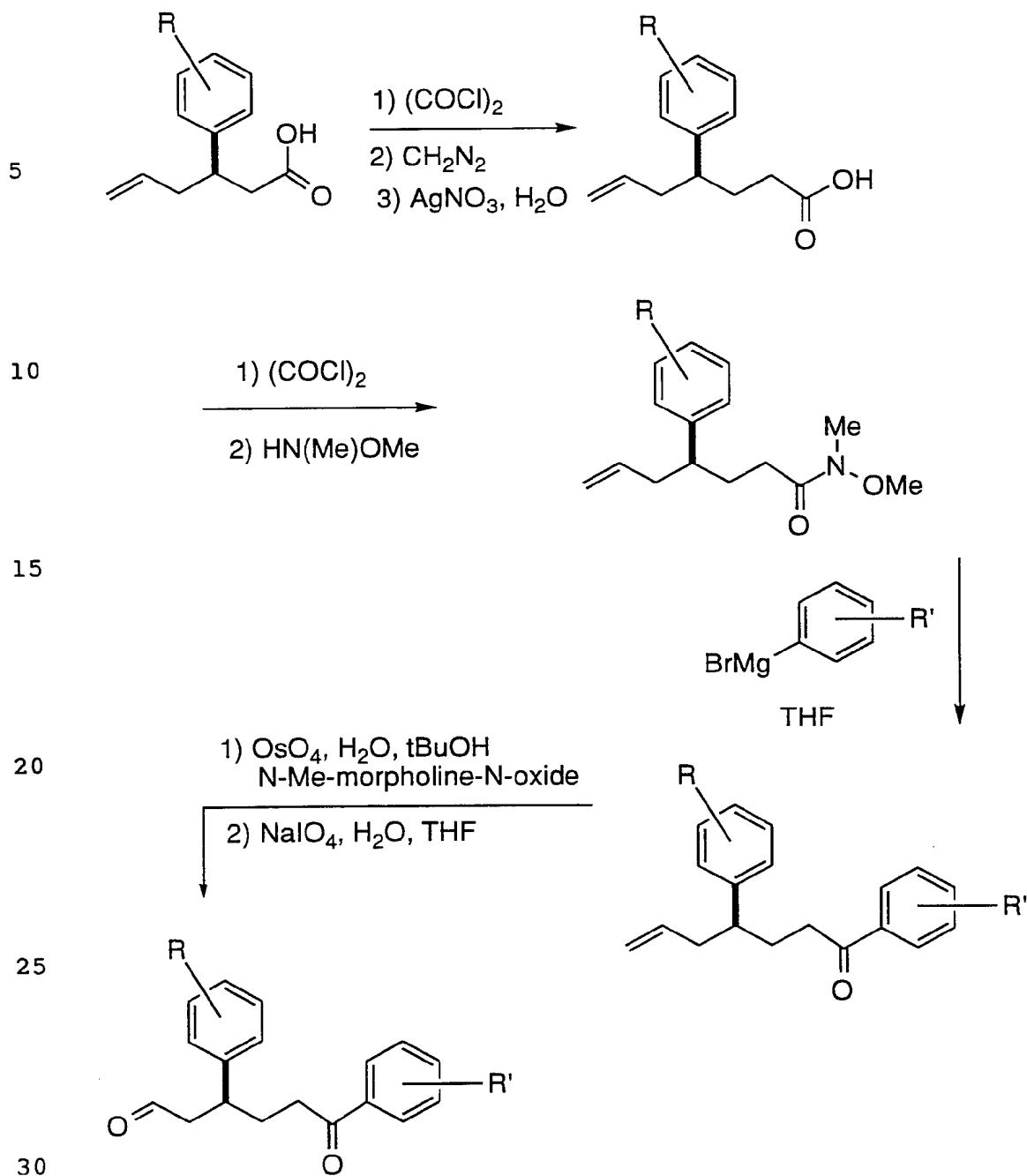
25

30

- 61 -



- 62 -



Alcohol containing antagonists can be prepared according to procedures given in Scheme 8. Formation of the N-methyl-N-methoxy amide of the indicated acid followed by oxidative cleavage of

- 63 -

the olefin provides the intermediate aldehyde. Coupling with a  
spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine) derivative followed by addition of an  
organometallic reagent to the amide provides the illustrated ketone.  
Treatment with a hydride reducing agent, such as sodium borohydride,  
5 then yields the desired alcohol derivatives.

10

15

20

25

30

- 64 -

SCHEME 8

5

10

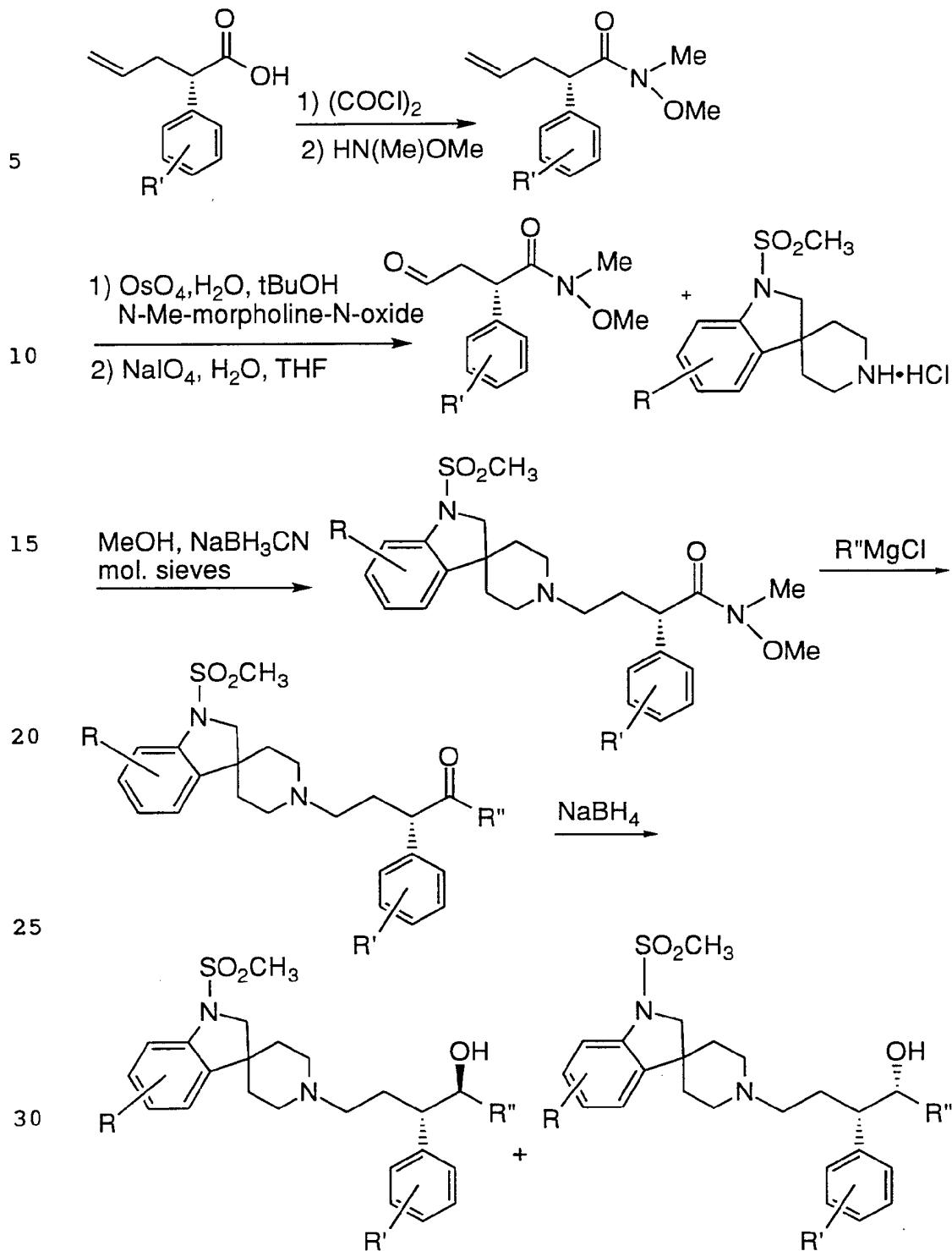
15

20

25

30

- 65 -



- 66 -

Formation of heterocycle substituted antagonists can be carried out according to the procedure given in Scheme 9 for substituted imidazoles. Reduction of the allyl acid with a strong reducing agent such as lithium aluminum hydride followed by in situ formation of the trifluoromethanesulfonate of the formed alcohol allows for displacement of the triflate with a nucleophile such as 2-phenylimidazole. Oxidative cleavage under standard conditions provides the indicated aldehyde which can then be coupled under the conditions described above to the appropriate spiro derivative.

10

SCHEME 9

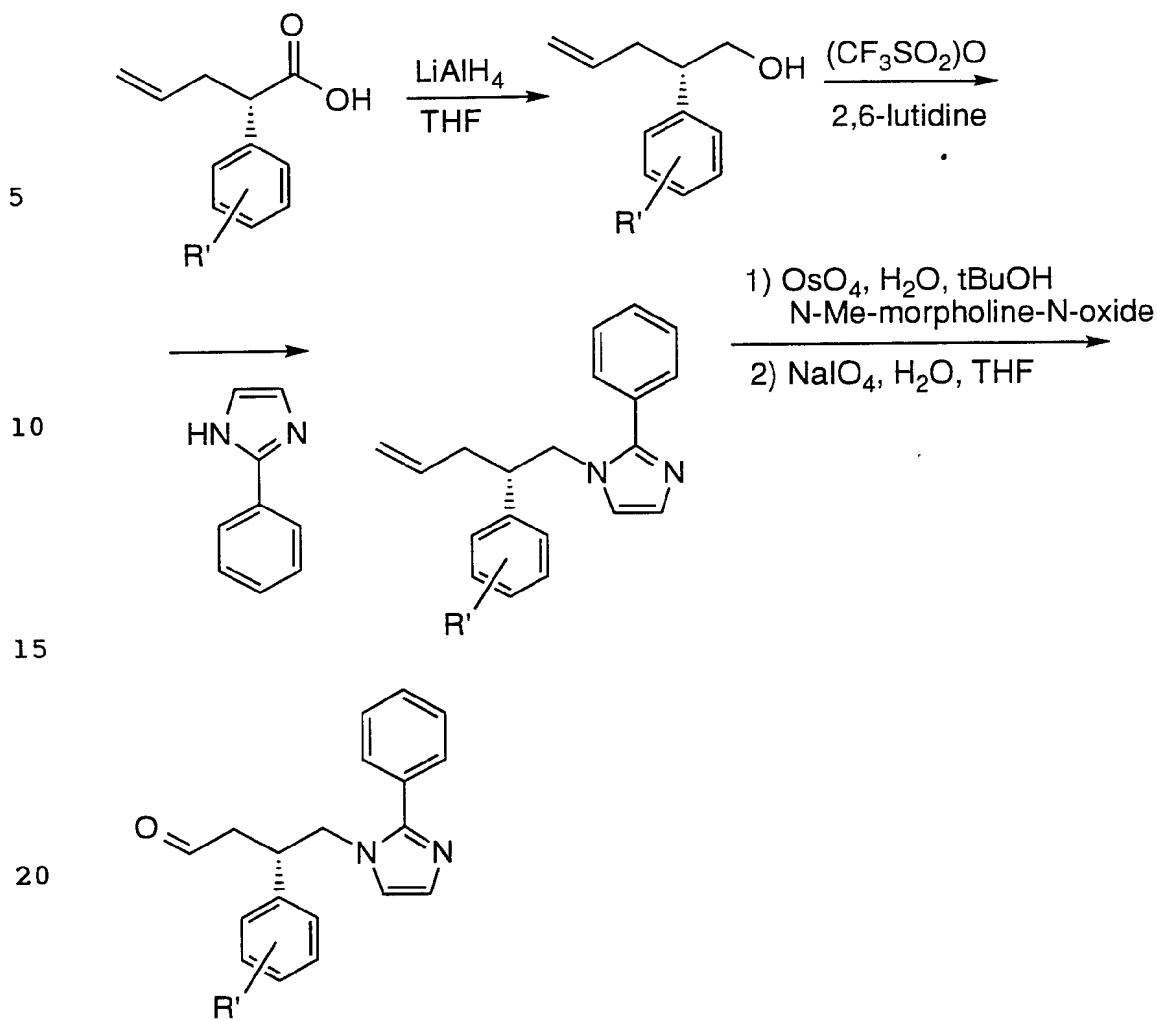
15

20

25

30

- 67 -

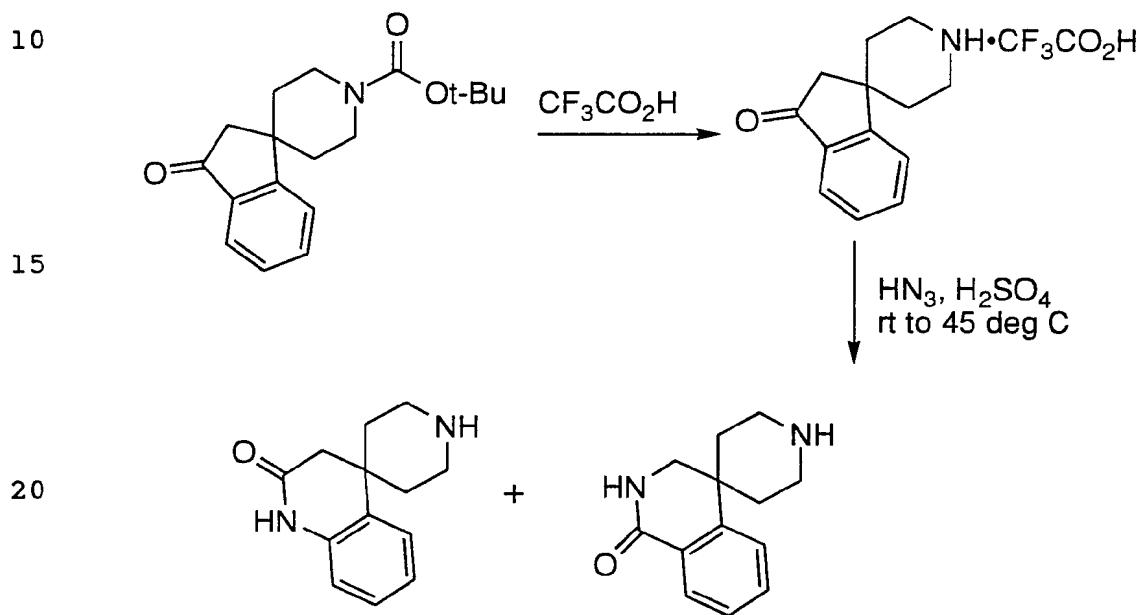


Spiro(2-oxo-1,2,3,4-tetrahydroquinoline-4,4'-piperidine) and spiro(1-oxo-1,2,3,4-tetrahydroisoquinoline-4,4'-piperidine) can be prepared as shown in Scheme 10. Starting from the indicated spiro(2-oxoindane-3,4'-piperidine) (described in Claremon, D.A. *et al*, European Patent 0 431 943 943 A2, Evans, B.E. *et al*, U.S. Patent 5,091,387, Davis, L. *et al*, U.S. Patent 4,420,485, all of which are incorporated by reference, and Parham *et al*, *Journal of Organic Chemistry*, 41, 2628 (1976)), deprotection of the piperidine nitrogen is carried out by treatment with acid, for example trifluoroacetic acid, followed by protection as the trifluoroacetamide, and the product is

- 68 -

exposed to hydrazoic acid in the presence of sulfuric acid. Heating of this mixture effects a Schmidt rearrangement, to provide both the tetrahydroquinoline and the tetrahydroisoquinoline derivatives. These spiro compounds can then be separated and coupled to functionalized aldehydes by the methodology given above.

SCHEME 10



25

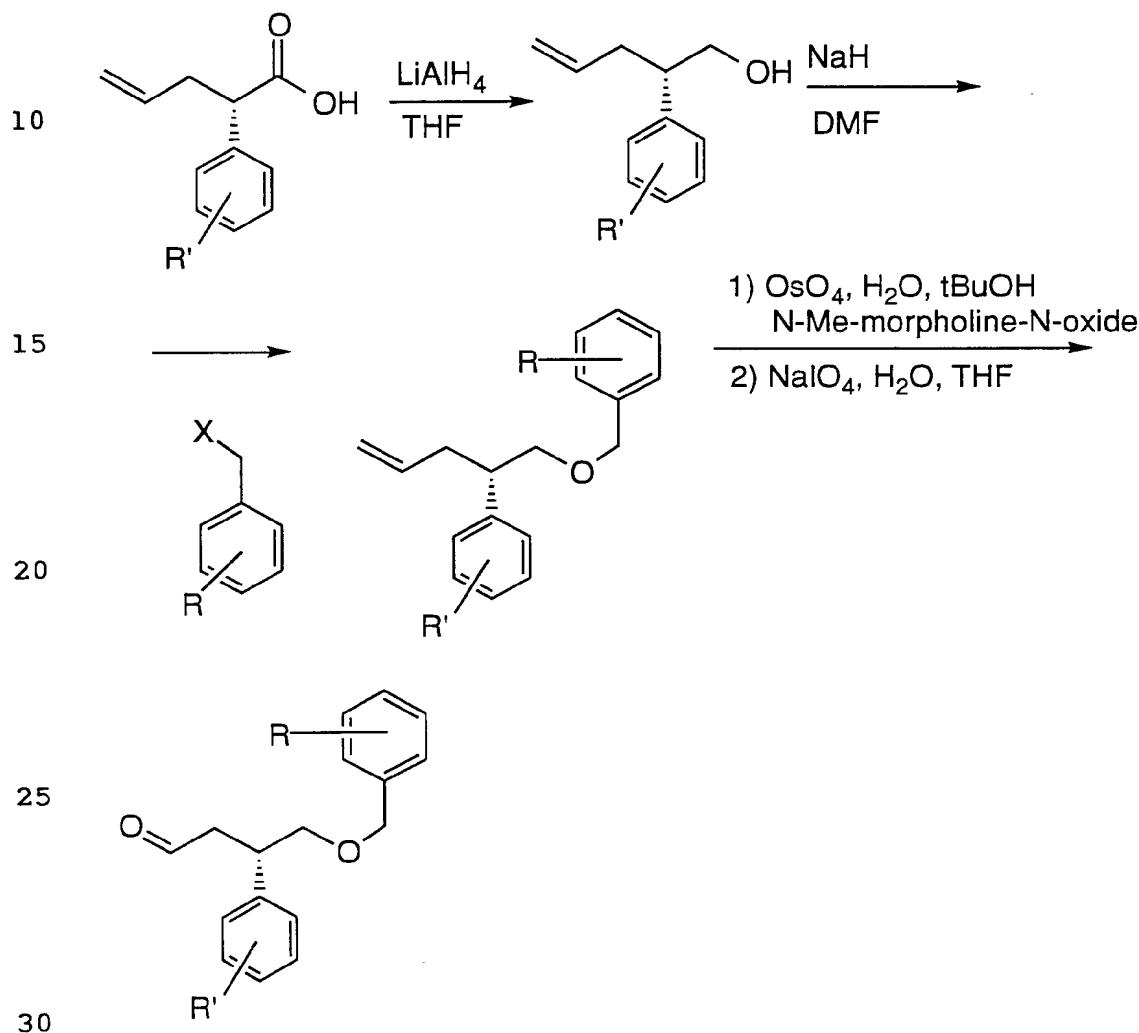
Neurokinin antagonists with ether substituents can also be prepared by the route shown in Scheme 11. Thus, the allyl acid discussed earlier can be reduced to the corresponding alcohol with, for example, lithium aluminum hydride. This alcohol can be alkylated by a Williamson ether synthesis, by deprotonation with a strong base such as sodium hydride or sodium hexamethyldisilazide followed by reaction with a benzyl halide such as benzyl bromide. The product can be processed through the oxidative cleavage steps described earlier to provide the aldehyde, which can then be coupled with a spirocycle kunder reductive amination

- 69 -

conditions or else by reduction to the corresponding alcohol and conversion to the bromide. the bromide can then be used to alkylate a spirocycle under the conditions detailed above.

5

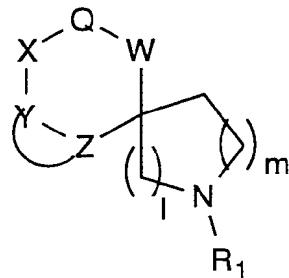
SCHEME 11



Accordingly in another aspect the invention encompasses a process of making compounds of formula I

- 70 -

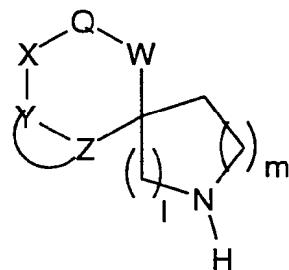
5



I

10 as defined above, comprising the steps of:  
 10 (a) reacting a compound of formula A

15



20

A

in a suitable solvent such as acetonitrile or dimethylacetamide with a compound of formula R1-X1 wherein X1 is a leaving group such as bromo, chloro, tosyl or mesyl optionally in the presence of a suitable base such as trialkylamine; or  
 25

(b) reacting a compound of formula A in a second suitable solvent such as methanol or ethanol with a compound of the formula R-CH(O), wherein R-CH2 is R1 as defined above, in the presence of a reducing agent such as sodium cyanoborohydride or hydrogen and a palladium on carbon catalyst; or  
 30

(c) reacting a compound of formula A in a halocarbon solvent such as methylene chloride with a compound of the formula R-C(O)X2 wherein

- 71 -

X<sub>2</sub> is a suitable leaving group such as bromo or chloro in the presence of a suitable base such as trialkylamine, to yield a compound of formula I.

5

### EXAMPLE 1

3-(S)-(3,4-Dichlorophenyl)-4-(N-(t-butoxycarbonyl)methylamino)butanal

10 A solution of 10 g (41 mmol) of 3-(S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl)-4-methylamino-1-pentene in 100 mL of CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> was cooled in an ice bath and treated with 5.8 mL (41 mmol) of triethylamine (Et<sub>3</sub>N) and 9 g (41 mmol) of di-t-butyl dicarbonate. The cold bath was removed after 5 min and the stirring was continued for 1 h. The reaction mixture was diluted with CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> and washed with water, 1.2  
15 N HCl, saturated NaHCO<sub>3</sub> and brine. The solution was dried over Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub> and concentrated to give 14.58 g of residual oil.  
1H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, ppm ranges are given because of amide rotomers and line broadening) δ 1.36 (s, 9H), 2.33 (m, 2H), 2.60 & 2.70 (2s, 3H), 2.8-3.6 (m, 3H), 4.94 (m, 2H), 5.59 (m, 1H), 6.9-7.4 (m, 3H).

20 The residue was dissolved in 80 mL of acetone, 40 mL of t-butanol and 40 mL of water. To this solution 1 mL of osmium tetroxide (4% solution in water) and 5.15 g (44 mmol) of 4-methylmorpholine N-oxide were added. After stirring for 26 h, the reaction was quenched with approximately 5 g of Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>3</sub> and  
25 concentrated to 25% of the original volume. The residue was partitioned between water and 1:1 ether (Et<sub>2</sub>O), ethyl acetate (EtOAc), the layers were separated and the aqueous layer was extracted with Et<sub>2</sub>O:EtOAc. Each organic layer was washed with water, brine and dried by filtering through Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>. The filtrate was concentrated to 30 afford the crude diol.

A solution of the diol in 120 mL of tetrahydrofuran (THF) and 40 mL of water was treated with 9.42 g (44 mmol) of sodium periodate. After stirring for 2 h, the reaction was diluted with Et<sub>2</sub>O:EtOAc and washed with water and brine. The organic layer was

- 72 -

dried (Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>) and the filtrate was concentrated. The residue was purified by prepLC using 30% EtOAc/hexane to furnish 11.74 g (83% yield for three steps) of the title compound as a thick oil.

5       <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, ppm ranges are given because of amide rotomers and line broadening) δ 1.38 (s, 9H), 2.69 & 2.75 (2s, 3H), 2.6-3.65 (m, 5H), 6.95-7.4 (m, 3H), 9.67 (s, 1H).

### EXAMPLE 2

10      1'-(3-(S)-(3,4-Dichlorophenyl)-4-(N-(t-butoxycarbonyl)(methylamino))butyl)-1-methanesulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine)

---

15      To a solution of 0.76 g (2.2 mmol) of 3-(S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl)-4-(N-(t-butoxycarbonyl)methylamino)butanal (from Example 1) in 4 mL of methanol were added 0.608 g (2 mmol) of 1-methane-sulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine) hydrochloride and 0.6 g of powdered 4 Å molecular sieves. After 15 min a solution of 0.554 g (8.8 mmol) of NaCNBH<sub>3</sub> in 8 mL of THF was dropwise added. Some gas evolution was observed. After 2 h, when the reaction was complete by TLC, the mixture was filtered through a pad of celite, the reaction flask and the pad were rinsed with methanol. The filtrate was concentrated to approximately 5 ml and the residue was partitioned between saturated NaHCO<sub>3</sub> and Et<sub>2</sub>O:EtOAc. The organic layer was washed with water, brine and dried over Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>. The filtrate was concentrated and the residue was chromatographed on a flash column using a gradient of 49:49:2 to 74:24:2 EtOAc:hexane: triethylamine to furnish 0.94 g (72%) of the title compound as a foam.

20

25

1H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, ppm ranges are given because of amide rotomers and line broadening) δ 1.37 (s, 9H), 1.6-3.6 (m, 15H), 2.61 & 2.72 (2s, 3H), 2.86 (s, 3H), 3.74 (s, 2H), 6.95-7.4 (m, 7H).

### EXAMPLE 3

- 73 -

1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-Dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3,5-dimethylbenzoyl)(methylamino)) butyl)-1-methanesulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine)

5      Step A:    1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(methylamino)butyl)-1-methanesulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine)  
Cold trifluoroacetic acid (TFA, 4 mL) and 0.2 mL of anisole were added to 0.94 g (1.57 mmol) of 1'-(3-(S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl)-4-(N-(t-butoxycarbonyl)(methylamino))butyl)-1-methanesulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine) and the mixture was stirred in an ice bath until all the foam dissolved. After stirring the resulting solution at room temperature for 30 min, it was concentrated *in vacuo*. The residue was partitioned between 0.5 N NaOH and CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> and the layers were separated. The organic layer was washed with brine, dried over Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub> and concentrated to give 0.7 g of foam which was used in the next step without purification.

10     1<sup>H</sup> NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, ppm ranges are given because of amide rotomers and line broadening) δ 1.7-2.7 (m, 10H), 2.64 (s, 3H), 2.88 (s, 3H), 2.9-3.4 (m, 5H), 3.70 (s, 2H), 6.8-7.4 (m, 7H).

15

20     Step B:    1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-Dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3,5-dimethylbenzoyl)(methylamino))butyl)-1-methanesulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine)  
A solution of 0.12 g (0.52 mmol) of 3,5-dimethylbenzoic acid in 2 mL of CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> containing 1 drop of DMF was treated with 85 ul of oxalyl chloride. (Caution-gas evolution!) After 20 min the solution was concentrated *in vacuo* and the residue was mixed with 0.2 g (0.4 mmol) of 1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(methylamino)butyl)-1-methane-sulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine) obtained from Step A, and 0.14 mL (1 mmol) of Et<sub>3</sub>N in 2 mL of CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>. After 1 h the reaction mixture was diluted with CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> and washed with saturated NaHCO<sub>3</sub>, water, and brine. The CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> solution was dried over Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>, filtered and concentrated. Purification of the residue by prep

- 74 -

TLC using 2% Et<sub>3</sub>N/EtOAc afforded 0.238 g (93% yield) of the title compound as a foam.

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, ppm ranges are given because of amide rotomers and line broadening) δ 1.6-2.4 (m, 10H), 2.27 (s, 6 H), 2.6-3.9 (m, 10H), 2.86 (s, 3H), 6.6-7.5 (m, 10H).

The following compounds were prepared by substituting the required acid chloride for 3,5-dimethylbenzoyl chloride in Step B.  
<sup>1</sup>-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(benzoyl)(methylamino)) butyl)-1-methanesulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine)

<sup>10</sup> Mass Spectrum (FAB) 602 (37Cl + 35Cl isotope), 600 (35Cl + 35Cl isotope).

<sup>15</sup> <sup>1</sup>-(3-((S)-(3,4-Dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3,5-bistrifluoromethylbenzoyl)(methylamino))butyl)-1-methanesulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine)

Mass Spectrum (FAB) 738 (37Cl + 35Cl isotope), 736 (35Cl + 35Cl isotope).

<sup>20</sup> <sup>1</sup>-(3-((S)-(3,4-Dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3-methylbenzoyl)(methylamino))-butyl)-1-methanesulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine)

<sup>25</sup> <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, ppm ranges are given because of amide rotomers and line broadening) δ 1.6-2.4 (m, 10H), 2.32 (s, 3H), 2.6-3.9 (m, 10H), 2.86 (s, 3H), 6.75-7.5 (m, 11H).

Mass Spectrum (FAB) 616 (37Cl + 35Cl isotope), 614 (35Cl + 35Cl isotope).

<sup>30</sup> <sup>1</sup>-(3-((S)-(3,4-Dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3-chlorobenzoyl)(methylamino))-butyl)-1-methanesulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine)

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, ppm ranges are given because of amide rotomers and line broadening) δ 1.6-2.4 (m, 10H), 2.6-3.9 (m, 10H), 2.86 (s, 3H), 6.75-7.5 (m, 11H).

- 75 -

Mass Spectrum (FAB) 635 ( $^{37}\text{Cl} + ^{35}\text{Cl}$  isotope), 633 ( $^{35}\text{Cl} + ^{35}\text{Cl}$  isotope).

5 1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-Dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3-trifluoromethylbenzoyl)  
(methyl-amino))butyl)-1-methanesulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-  
piperidine)

Mass Spectrum (FAB) 669 ( $^{37}\text{Cl} + ^{35}\text{Cl}$  isotope), 667 ( $^{35}\text{Cl} + ^{35}\text{Cl}$  isotope).

10 1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-Dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3,5-dichlorobenzoyl)  
(methylamino))-butyl)-1-methanesulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-  
piperidine)  
15  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, ppm ranges are given because of amide rotomers and  
line broadening)  $\delta$  1.6-2.4 (m, 10H), 2.6-3.9 (m, 10H), 2.86 (s, 3H),  
6.75-7.5 (m, 10H).

Mass Spectrum (FAB) 671 ( $^{37}\text{Cl} + ^{35}\text{Cl}$  isotope), 669 ( $^{35}\text{Cl} + ^{35}\text{Cl}$  isotope).

20 1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-Dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3-trifluoromethylphenylacetyl)  
(methylamino))butyl)-1-methanesulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine)  
Mass Spectrum (FAB) 684 ( $^{37}\text{Cl} + ^{35}\text{Cl}$  isotope), 682 ( $^{35}\text{Cl} + ^{35}\text{Cl}$  isotope).

25 1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-Dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3-isopropoxyphenylacetyl)  
(methyl-amino))butyl)-1-methanesulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-  
piperidine)

30 1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-Dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(benzenesulfonyl)  
(methylamino))-butyl)-1-methanesulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-  
piperidine)

15  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, ppm ranges are given because of amide rotomers and  
line broadening)  $\delta$  1.65 (m, 3H), 1.8-2.3 (m, 7H), 2.62 (s, 3H), 2.7-3.05  
(m, 4H), 2.86 (s, 3H), 3.3 (m, 2H), 3.74 (s, 2H), 7.0-7.7 (m, 12H).

- 76 -

Mass Spectrum (FAB) 637 ( $^{37}\text{Cl} + ^{35}\text{Cl}$  isotope), 635 ( $^{35}\text{Cl} + ^{35}\text{Cl}$  isotope).

5 The following compounds were also prepared by using the appropriate acid chloride under the conditions given in Step B above:  
1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3,5-difluorobenzoyl)(methylamino))butyl)-1-methanesulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine)  
Mass Spectrum (FAB) 638( $^{37}\text{Cl} + ^{35}\text{Cl}$  isotope), 636( $^{35}\text{Cl} + ^{35}\text{Cl}$  isotope).

10 1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-Dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3-fluoro-5-(trifluoromethyl)-benzoyl)(methylamino))butyl)-1-methanesulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine)

15 Mass Spectrum (CI) 688 ( $^{37}\text{Cl} + ^{35}\text{Cl}$  isotope), 686 ( $^{35}\text{Cl} + ^{35}\text{Cl}$  isotope).

1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-Dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(1-naphthoyl)(methylamino))-butyl)-1-methanesulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine)  
20  $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ , ppm ranges are given because of amide rotomers and line broadening) d  
Mass Spectrum (FAB) ( $^{37}\text{Cl} + ^{35}\text{Cl}$  isotope), ( $^{35}\text{Cl} + ^{35}\text{Cl}$  isotope).

1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-Dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(2-chlorophenylsulfonyl)-(methylamino))butyl)-1-methylsulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine)  
25 Mass Spectrum: 200, 202, 228, 230, 279, 308, 310, 494, 496, 670, 672 (cluster).

1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-Dichlorophenyl))-1-(N-(3-chlorophenylsulfonyl)-(methylamino))-4-butyl)-1-methylsulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine)  
30 Mass Spectrum: 200, 202, 228, 230, 279, 308, 310, 494, 496, 670, 672 (cluster).

- 77 -

1'-((S)-(3,4-Dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(4-chlorophenylsulfonyl)-(methylamino))butyl)-1-methylsulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine)  
Mass Spectrum: 200, 228, 230, 279, 494, 496, 669 (cluster).

5 1'-((S)-(3,4-Dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3,5-dichlorophenylsulfonyl)-(methylamino))butyl)-1-methylsulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine)  
Mass Spectrum: 228, 230, 279, 494, 496, 703, 705 (cluster).

#### EXAMPLE 4

10

##### 1-Benzylloxycarbonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidinium) hydrochloride

A solution of 99 g (489 mmol) of 1'-methylspiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine) (prepared according to Ong, H. H. *et al*, *J. Med. Chem.*, 1983, 26, 981-986) in 1 L of  $\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}_2$  and 82 mL (539 mmol) of  $\text{Et}_3\text{N}$  was cooled to 0-5°C with an ice bath and 77 mL (539 mmol) of benzyl chloroformate was added over 30 min keeping the reaction temperature below 10°C. After stirring for 2 h 19 mL (136 mmol) of  $\text{Et}_3\text{N}$  and 15 mL (105 mmol) of benzyl chloroformate were added since the reaction was incomplete and stirred for 2 h. At this time, additional 19 mL (136 mmol) of  $\text{Et}_3\text{N}$  and 15 mL (105 mmol) of benzyl chloroformate were added. After 1 h, when a TLC indicated a complete reaction, the solution was concentrated *in vacuo* and the residue was partitioned between ether and saturated  $\text{NaHCO}_3$ . The layers were separated, the organic layer was washed with saturated  $\text{NaHCO}_3$  and brine, and dried over  $\text{MgSO}_4$ . The filtrate was concentrated and the residue was chromatographed on 2 kg of silica gel using 1-5%  $\text{MeOH}/\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}_2$  to obtain 117 g (71%) of 1-benzylloxycarbonyl-1'-methylspiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine) as a yellow oil.

The yellow oil was dissolved in 800 mL of 1,2-dichloroethane and cooled in ice bath as 50 mL (463 mmol) of 1-chloroethyl chloroformate keeping the temperature below 10°C. The resulting solution was heated to reflux. Gas evolution was noticed when the reaction temperature reached 70-75°C. After 1 h the solution was cooled, concentrated to ca. 250 mL *in vacuo* and 700 mL of methanol

- 78 -

was added. The mixture was refluxed for 1.5 h and gas evolution was observed. The reaction was cooled to room temperature and concentrated *in vacuo* to a wet solid. The solid was slurried with cold methanol, the solid was filtered, washed with cold methanol and dried.

5 The filtrates and the washing were combined and concentrated to a brown foam. The brown foam and the filtered solid were suspended in CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>, washed with 2.5 N NaOH and the CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> solution was dried. The residue was chromatographed on 2 kg of silica gel using a gradient of 94:5:1 to 89:10:1 CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>, methanol, NH<sub>4</sub>OH to isolate 91.3 g of free base as a brown oil. The oil was dissolved in 1 L of EtOAc by adding methanol (ca. 10 mL) and HCl gas was passed through the solution.

10 After stirring the acidic solution for 10 min, it was concentrated to a foam. The foam was triturated with ether and the solid was filtered, washed with more ether and dried to furnish 91.5 g (73%) of title

15 compound as a light yellow solid.

#### EXAMPLE 5

20 3-((S)-(3,4-Dichlorophenyl))-4-((3,5-dimethylbenzoyl)methylamino)-butanal

The title compound was prepared using the procedures described in Example 1 by substituting 3,5-dimethylbenzoyl chloride for di-t-butyl dicarbonate.

25 <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, ppm ranges are given because of amide rotomers and line broadening) δ 2.27 (s, 6H), 2.6-3.9 (m, 8H), 6.5-7.5 (m, 6H), 9.73 (s, 1H).

#### EXAMPLE 6

30 1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-Dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3,5-dimethylbenzoyl)(methylamino))butyl)-1-benzyloxycarbonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine)

The title compound was prepared from 3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-((3,5-dimethylbenzoyl)methylamino)butanal (Example 5) and 1-benzyloxycarbonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-

- 79 -

piperidinium) hydrochloride (Example 4) following the procedure of Example 2.

1<sup>H</sup> NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, ppm ranges are given because of amide rotomers and line broadening) δ 1.6-2.35 (m, 10H), 2.27 (s, 6H), 2.6-3.9 (m, 10H), 5.23 & 5.3 (2 s, 2H), 6.6-7.6 (m, 15H).

Mass Spectrum (FAB) 686 (37Cl + 35Cl isotope), 684 (35Cl + 35Cl isotope).

#### EXAMPLE 7

1<sup>0</sup> 1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-Dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3,5-dimethylbenzoyl)(methylamino))butyl)-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine)

To a solution of 1.23 g (1.8 mmol) of 1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(3,5-dimethylbenzoyl(methylamino))butyl)-1-benzyloxycarbonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine) (Example 6) in 10 mL of ethanol and 0.8 mL of acetic acid (HOAc) was added 0.15 g of 10% Pd/C. The resulting mixture was hydrogenated on a Parr apparatus for 20 h. The catalyst was filtered and washed with EtOH. The combined filtrate was concentrated *in vacuo* and the residue was dissolved in CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>. The CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> solution was washed with dilute (ca 0.5 N) NaOH and brine, and dried by filtering through Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>. The filtrate was concentrated to furnish 1.03 g (quantitative) of the title compound as a foam which was used in the next reaction without purification.

1<sup>H</sup> NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, ppm ranges are given because of amide rotomers and line broadening) δ 1.6-2.45 (m, 10H), 2.27 (s, 6H), 2.6-3.9 (m, 10H), 6.5-7.5 (m, 10H).

Mass Spectrum (FAB) 552 (37Cl + 35Cl isotope), 550 (35Cl + 35Cl isotope).

#### EXAMPLE 8

30

1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-Dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3,5-dimethylbenzoyl)(methylamino))butyl)-1-acetyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine)

- 80 -

Acetyl chloride (16 uL) was added to a solution of 0.1 g (0.18 mmol) of 1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3,5-dimethylbenzoyl)(methylamino))butyl)-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine) (Example 7) in 4 mL of CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> containing 30 mL of pyridine. After stirring for 5 2 h, the reaction mixture was diluted with CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> and washed with saturated NaHCO<sub>3</sub>, water, brine and dried. The residue after concentration of the filtrate was purified by prep TLC using 5% Et<sub>3</sub>N/EtOAc as an eluent to afford 90 mg (84%) of the title compound. 10 <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, ppm ranges are given because of amide rotomers and line broadening) δ 1.55-2.5 (m, 10H), 2.22 (s, 3H), 2.27 (s, 6H), 2.6-3.9 (m, 10H), 6.6-7.5 (m, 9H), 8.17 (d, 1H, J = 12Hz). Mass Spectrum (FAB) 594 (37Cl + 35Cl isotope), 592 (35Cl + 35Cl isotope).

15 The following analogs were prepared by substituting the appropriate acylation reagent for acetyl chloride in the above procedure.

1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-Dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3,5-dimethylbenzoyl)(methylamino))butyl)-1-propionyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine) 20 Mass Spectrum (FAB) 608 (37Cl + 35Cl isotope), 606 (35Cl + 35Cl isotope).

1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-Dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3,5-dimethylbenzoyl)(methylamino)) butyl)-1-formyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine) 25 Mass Spectrum (FAB) 580 (37Cl + 35Cl isotope), 578 (35Cl + 35Cl isotope).

1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-Dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3,5-dimethylbenzoyl)(methylamino)) butyl)-1-*t*-butylcarbonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine) 30 Mass Spectrum (FAB) 636 (37Cl + 35Cl isotope), 634 (35Cl + 35Cl isotope).

- 81 -

1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-Dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3,5-dimethylbenzoyl)(methylamino)) butyl)-1-methylaminocarbonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine)

5 Mass Spectrum (FAB) 609 (M+H,  $^{37}\text{Cl} + ^{35}\text{Cl}$  isotope), 607 (M+H,  $^{35}\text{Cl} + ^{35}\text{Cl}$  isotope).

1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-Dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3,5-dimethylbenzoyl)(methylamino)) butyl)-1-ethoxycarbonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine)

10 Mass Spectrum (FAB) 624 ( $^{37}\text{Cl} + ^{35}\text{Cl}$  isotope), 622 ( $^{35}\text{Cl} + ^{35}\text{Cl}$  isotope).

1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-Dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3,5-dimethylbenzoyl)(methylamino)) butyl)-1-ethanesulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine)

15 Mass Spectrum (FAB) 643 ( $^{37}\text{Cl} + ^{35}\text{Cl}$  isotope), 641 ( $^{35}\text{Cl} + ^{35}\text{Cl}$  isotope).

1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-Dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3,5-dimethylbenzoyl)(methylamino)) butyl)-1-*i*-propanesulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine)

20 Mass Spectrum (FAB) 657 ( $^{37}\text{Cl} + ^{35}\text{Cl}$  isotope), 655 ( $^{35}\text{Cl} + ^{35}\text{Cl}$  isotope).

The following compound can also be prepared under the conditions given above:

25 1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-Dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3-fluoro-5-(trifluoromethyl)-benzoyl)(methylamino))butyl)-1-acetyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine)

Mass Spectrum (FAB) (CI) 652 ( $^{37}\text{Cl} + ^{35}\text{Cl}$  isotope), 650 ( $^{35}\text{Cl} + ^{35}\text{Cl}$  isotope).

30 An alternative method (method B) is given below:

1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-Dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3,5-dimethylbenzoyl)(methylamino))butyl)-1-acetyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine)

1-Acetyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine)

Acetyl chloride (1.4 mL, 19.9 mmol) was added to a solution of 5.35 g (16.6 mmol) of 1'-benzyloxycarbonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine) in 33 mL of CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> and 3.2 mL (23.2 mmol) of Et<sub>3</sub>N 5 keeping the temperature between 0-5°C by cooling in ice bath. After 10 min the cold bath was removed and reaction was stirred for 30 min at which time a TLC indicated complete reaction. The solution was diluted with CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> and washed with water, brine and dried over Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>. The filtrate was concentrated to a thick oil and the oil was 10 dissolved in 40 mL of EtOH. Acetic acid (3 mL) and 0.8 g of 10% Pd/C were added to the solution and the resulting mixture was hydrogenated on a Parr apparatus for 3 h. The catalyst was filtered and washed with EtOAc and the combined filtrate was concentrated. The residue was partitioned between CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> and water and 2N NaOH was 15 added to this mixture until the aqueous layer was basic. The layers were separated and the aqueous layer was extracted with CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>. The combined organic layer was washed with brine, dried over Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub> and the filtrate was concentrated to give 2.93 g (77%) of the title compound sufficiently pure for use in the next reaction.

20

1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-Dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3,5-dimethylbenzoyl)(methylamino)) butyl)-1-acetyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine)

To a solution of 0.284 g (0.75 mmol) of 3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3,5-dimethylbenzoyl)(methylamino))butanal 25 (Example 5) in 2 mL of MeOH were added 0.166 g (0.72 mmol) of 1-acetyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine), 0.5 g of powdered 4 Å molecular sieves and 10 drops (ca. 0.1 mL) of acetic acid. After stirring the mixture for 1.5 h a solution of 0.189 g (3 mmol) of NaCNBH<sub>3</sub> in 3 mL of THF was added. Some gas evolution was observed. After 30 min 30 when the reaction was complete by TLC the mixture was filtered through a pad of celite, the reaction flask and the pad were rinsed with MeOH. The filtrate was concentrated to approximately 3 mL and the residue was diluted with EtOAc. The EtOAc solution was washed with water, brine and dried over Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>. The filtrate was concentrated and

- 83 -

the residue was chromatographed on a flash column using 50% EtOAc-hexane followed by 2% Et3N-EtOAc and finally 93:5:2 EtOAc: MeOH: Et3N to isolate 0.317 g (74%) of the title compound as a white foam.

5

### EXAMPLE 9

1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-Dichlorophenyl))-4-(3,5-dimethylbenzoyl(methylamino)) butyl)-1'-methyl-1-methanesulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidinium) iodide

10 A solution of 53 mg (0.084 mmol) of 1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(3,5-dimethylbenzoyl(methylamino))butyl)-1-methanesulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine) in 5 drops of MeOH was diluted with 1 mL of ether and 0.5 mL of methyl iodide was added. The reaction mixture was stirred overnight while a solid was formed.

15 The yellowish solid was allowed to settle and the supernatent was removed. The solid was washed with ether and dried to furnish 51 mg (78%) of the title compound.

20

### EXAMPLE 10

1'-(3-(S)-(3,4-Dichlorophenyl)-4-(N-(R or S)-(3-methylbenzoyl)(methyl-amino))pentyl)-1-methanesulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine)

25

Step 1: N-Methoxy-N-methyl-2-(S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl)-4-pentenamide

30

A mixture of 306 mg (1.25 mmol) of (2S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl)-4-pentenoic acid (prepared according to the procedure of Hale, J.J.; Finke, P.E.; MacCoss, M. *Bioorganic & Medicinal Chemistry Letters* 1993,3, 319-322) and 202 mg (1.50 mmol) of 1-hydroxybenzotriazole hydrate in 10 mL of methylene chloride was cooled to 0°C and treated with 287 mg (1.50 mmol) of 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide. The cooling bath was removed and after 45 min. a solution of 365 mg (3.75 mmol) of N,O-dimethyl-

- 84 -

hydroxylamine hydrochloride and 522  $\mu$ l (3.75 mmol) of triethylamine in 10 mL of methylene chloride was added via cannula. The mixture was then stirred at 22°C for 4 hours and then quenched with 10 mL of water and diluted with 8 mL of methylene chloride. The layers were separated and the aqueous layer was extracted with methylene chloride (2 x 10 mL). The combined organic layers were washed with 10 mL of brine, dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate, filtered, and concentrated *in vacuo*. Flash chromatography on 75 g of silica gel using 1:9 v/v ethyl acetate/ hexane as the eluant afforded 319 mg (89%) of the title compound as a clear oil.

10  $^1$ H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>)  $\delta$  2.40 (pentet, 1H), 2.75 (pentet, 1H), 3.13 (s, 3H), 3.52 (s, 3H), 3.99-4.01 (m, 1H), 4.96-5.05 (m, 2H), 5.63-5.70 (m, 1H), 7.15 (dd, 1H), 7.35 (d, 1H), 7.41 (d, 1H).

15 Mass Spectrum (FAB): m/z 290 (M+H, <sup>37</sup>Cl + <sup>35</sup>Cl isotope, 50%), 288 (M+H, <sup>37</sup>Cl + <sup>37</sup>Cl isotope, 100%).

**Step 2: 3-(S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl)-5-hexen-2-one**

A solution of 319 mg (1.11 mmol) of N-methoxy-N-methyl-2-(S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl)-4-pentenamide (from Step 1 above) in 10 mL of dry tetrahydrofuran was cooled to -70°C and treated with 1.0 mL (1.40 mmol) of methyllithium and stirred between -70°C to -40°C. After 3 hours, the reaction was quenched with 5 mL of water, and diluted with 10 mL of ethyl acetate. The layers were separated and the organic layer was washed with water (3 x 10 mL). The aqueous layers were extracted with 10 mL of ethyl acetate. The combined organic layers were washed with 10 mL of saturated aqueous sodium chloride solution, dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate, filtered, and concentrated *in vacuo*. Flash chromatography on 44 g of silica gel using 1:3 v/v ethyl acetate/hexane as the eluant afforded 250 mg (93%) of the title compound as a clear oil.

20  $^1$ H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>)  $\delta$  2.07 (s, 3H), 2.36 (pentet, 1H), 2.72 (pentet, 1H), 3.64 (t, 1H), 4.95-5.01 (m, 2H), 5.55-5.65 (m, 1H), 7.03 (dd, 1H), 7.30 (d, 1H), 7.39 (d, 1H).

- 85 -

Mass Spectrum (FAB): m/z 245 (M+H,  $^{37}\text{Cl} + ^{35}\text{Cl}$  isotope, 30%), 243 (M+H,  $^{37}\text{Cl} + ^{37}\text{Cl}$  isotope, 50%), 155 (60%), 119 (100%).

5      Step 3: N-Methyl 3-(S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl)-5-hexen-2-(RS)-amine

A mixture of 102 mg (0.42 mmol) of 3-(S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl)-5-hexen-2-one (from Step 2 above), 170 mg (2.52 mmol) of methylamine hydrochloride, and 234  $\mu\text{l}$  (1.68 mmol) of triethylamine in 4.0 mL of methanol was treated with 16 mg (0.25 mmol) of sodium cyanoborohydride and stirred at 22°C for 20 hours. Saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate solution (1.0 mL) was added and the resulting milky mixture was diluted with 5.0 mL of ethyl acetate and 5.0 mL of water. The layers were separated and the organic layer was washed with water (3 x 5 mL). The aqueous layers were extracted with 10 mL of ethyl acetate. The combined organic layers were washed with 10 mL of saturated aqueous sodium chloride solution, dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate, filtered, and concentrated *in vacuo*. Flash chromatography on 42 g of silica gel using 10:1 v/v ether/ hexane as the eluant afforded 64 mg of the higher R<sub>f</sub> isomer (Isomer A) and 22 mg of a lower R<sub>f</sub> isomer (Isomer B) both as yellow oils.

1H NMR (400 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ ); Isomer A:  $\delta$  1.04 (d, 3 H), 2.29-2.35 (m, 4 H), 2.50-2.68 (m, 3H), 4.86-4.95 (m, 2H), 5.48-5.56 (m, 1H), 7.01 (dd, 1H), 7.26 (d, 1H), 7.34 (d, 1H); Isomer B:  $\delta$  0.86 (d, 3H), 2.32-2.50 (m, 4H), 2.51-2.53 (m, 1H), 2.68-2.73 (m, 2H), 4.88-4.98 (m, 2H), 5.54-5.61 (m, 1H), 6.97 (dd, 1H), 7.22 (d, 1H), 7.33 (d, 1H).

25      Mass Spectrum (Isomer A) (FAB): m/z 260 (M+H,  $^{37}\text{Cl} + ^{35}\text{Cl}$  isotope, 70%), 258 (M+H,  $^{35}\text{Cl} + ^{35}\text{Cl}$  isotope, 100%).

30      Step 4: N-Methyl-N-t-butoxycarbonyl-3-(S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl)-5-hexen-2-(RS)-amine

A solution of 1.1 g (4.1 mmol) of N-methyl-(3-(S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl)-5-hexen-2-(R or S)-amine (Isomer B from Step 3 above) in 10 mL of dry methylene chloride was cooled to 0°C and treated with 690  $\mu\text{l}$  (5.0 mmol) of triethylamine and 1.2 g (5.3 mmol)

- 86 -

of di-*tert*-butyl dicarbonate. The cooling bath was removed and the reaction was stirred at 22°C for 20 hours. The reaction was quenched with 10 mL of water and diluted with 25 mL of methylene chloride. The layers were separated and the aqueous layer was extracted with 5 methylene chloride (2 x 10 mL). The combined organic layers were washed with 15 mL of brine, dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate, filtered, and concentrated *in vacuo*. Flash chromatography on 72 g of silica gel using 1:3 v/v ethyl acetate/ hexane as the eluant afforded 1.4 g (95%) of the title compound as a yellow oil.

10 <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>, ranges are given due to amide rotamers and line broadening) δ 1.24-5.70 (22H), 6.88-7.40 (3H), 1.50 (s, 3H, N-CH<sub>3</sub>).

Mass Spectrum (FAB): m/z 358 (M+H, <sup>37</sup>Cl + <sup>35</sup>Cl isotope, 30%), 302 (100%).

15

Step 5: N-Methyl-N-*t*-butoxycarbonyl-3-(S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl)-4-(RS)-amino-pentanal

A solution of 1.4 g (3.9 mmol) of N-methyl-N-*t*-butoxycarbonyl-3-(S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl)-5-hexen-2-(RS)-amine (from Step 20 4 above) in 20 mL of 2:1:1 v/v/v acetone/*t*-butanol/water was treated with 30 mg (0.12 mmol) of osmium tetroxide. After 5 min., 691 mg (5.90 mmol) of N-methylmorpholine N-oxide was added and the resulting mixture was stirred at 22°C for 4 hours. The reaction was quenched with 491 mg of sodium bisulfite and concentrated *in vacuo* to 25% of the original volume. The residue was partitioned between 20 mL of methylene chloride and 10 mL of water and the layers were separated. The aqueous layer was extracted with methylene chloride (2 x 10 mL). The combined organic layers were dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate, filtered, and concentrated *in vacuo*.

30 A solution of the crude diol in 24 mL of 3:1 v/v tetrahydrofuran/water was treated with 1.1 g (5.1 mmol) of sodium periodate and stirred at 22°C for 20 hours. The reaction mixture was partitioned between 20 mL of ethyl ether and 10 mL of water and the layers were separated. The organic layer was washed with water (2 x

- 87 -

15 mL), dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate, filtered, and concentrated *in vacuo*. Flash chromatography on 68 g of silica gel using 4:1 v/v ethyl ether/hexane as the eluant afforded 372 mg of the higher R<sub>f</sub> isomer (Isomer A) and 879 mg of a lower R<sub>f</sub> isomer (Isomer B) both as 5 yellow oils.

1H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) Isomer B:  $\delta$  1.19-1.34 (m, 13H), 2.45 (s, 3H, N-CH<sub>3</sub>), 2.68-2.81 (m, 2H), 3.28-3.34 (m, 1H), 4.20-4.50 (m, 1H), 6.98-7.32 (m, 3H), 9.60 (s, 1H, -CHO).

10 Mass Spectrum (Isomer B) (FAB): m/z 360 (M+H, 37Cl + 35Cl isotope, 20%), 242 (100%).

Step 6: 1'-(3-(S)-(3,4-Dichlorophenyl)-4-(N-(R or S)-(t-butoxy-carbonyl)(methylamino))pentyl)-1-methanesulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine)

15 A mixture of 217 mg (0.60 mmol) of N-methyl-N-t-butoxycarbonyl-3-(S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl)-4-(RS)-amino-pentanal (from Step 5 above) and 262 mg (0.86 mmol) of 1-methanesulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine) hydrochloride in 13 mL of methanol was treated with 115 mg (1.83 mmol) of sodium cyanoborohydride and 20 stirred at 22°C for 20 hours. Saturated sodium bicarbonate solution (1.0 ml) was added and the resulting milky mixture was concentrated to 50% of its original volume. The residue was partitioned between 25 mL of ethyl acetate and 15 mL of water and the layers were separated. The organic layer was washed with water (3 x 10 mL). The aqueous 25 layers were extracted with 20 mL of ethyl acetate. The combined organic layers were washed with 15 mL of brine, dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate, filtered, and concentrated *in vacuo*. Flash chromatography on 42 g of silica gel using 5:95 v/v methanol/methylene chloride as the eluant afforded 329 mg (89%) of the title compound as a white 30 foam.

1H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>, ranges are given due to amide rotamers and line broadening)  $\delta$  1.20-2.90 (31H), 3.74 (s, 3H, N-SO<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub>), 7.05-7.41 (m, 8H).

- 88 -

Mass Spectrum (FAB): m/z 612 (M+H,  $^{37}\text{Cl} + ^{35}\text{Cl}$  isotope, 70%), 610 (M+H,  $^{37}\text{Cl} + ^{37}\text{Cl}$  isotope, 100%).

5 Step 7: 1'-(3-(S)-(3,4-Dichlorophenyl)-4-(N-(R or S)-  
(methylamino))pentyl)-1-methanesulfonyl-spiro(indoline-  
3,4'-piperidine)

10 To a solution of 329 mg (0.54 mmol) of 1'-(3-(S)-(3,4-  
dichlorophenyl)-4-N((R or S)-(t-butoxycarbonyl)  
(methylamino))pentyl)-1-methanesulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-  
15 piperidine) (from Step 6 above) in 8.0 mL of dry methylene chloride at  
0°C was added 117  $\mu\text{l}$  (1.1 mmol) of anisole and 2.0 mL of  
trifluoroacetic acid. The cooling bath was removed and the reaction  
was stirred at 22°C for 20 minutes. The reaction was concentrated *in  
vacuo*. The residue was partitioned between 10 mL of methylene  
15 chloride and 5.0 mL of water. The organic layer was washed with 2N  
NaOH (3 x 5 mL), dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate, filtered, and  
concentrated *in vacuo*. Flash chromatography on 42 g of silica gel  
using 5:95:0.5 v/v/v methanol/methylene chloride/ammonium hydroxide  
20 as the eluant afforded 221 mg (80%) of the title compound as a clear  
oil.

$^1\text{H}$  NMR (400 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  1.05 (d, 3H,  $J = 6.2\text{Hz}$ ), 1.62-2.85 (m,  
17H), 2.30 (s, 3H, N-CH<sub>3</sub>), (7.03-7.37 (m, 7H).

25 Mass Spectrum (FAB): m/z 512 (M+H,  $^{37}\text{Cl} + ^{35}\text{Cl}$  isotope, 70%), 510 (M+H,  $^{37}\text{Cl} + ^{37}\text{Cl}$  isotope, 100%).

30 Step 8: 1'-(3-(S)-(3,4-Dichlorophenyl)-4-(N-(R or S)-(3-methyl-  
benzoyl)(methylamino))pentyl)-1-methanesulfonyl-  
spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine)

The title compound was prepared from 1'-(3-(S)-(3,4-  
dichlorophenyl)-4-(R or S)-(methylamino)pentyl)-1-methanesulfonyl-  
spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine) (from Step 7 above) using a procedure  
identical to Example 3, Step (b), substituting m-toluoyl chloride for  
3,5-dimethylbenzoyl chloride.

- 89 -

1H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>, ranges are given due to amide rotamers and line broadening) δ 1.42 (δ, 3H, J = 6.7Hz), 1.60-2.30 (16H), 2.54 (s, 3H, Ph-CH<sub>3</sub>), 2.87 (s, 3H, N-CH<sub>3</sub>), 3.74 (s, 3H, N-SO<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub>), 7.05-7.79 (m, 11H).

5 Mass Spectrum (FAB): m/z 630 (M+H, <sup>37</sup>Cl + <sup>35</sup>Cl isotope, 70%), 628 (M+H, <sup>37</sup>Cl + <sup>37</sup>Cl isotope, 100%).

### EXAMPLE 11

10 1'-(3-(S)-(3,4-Dichlorophenyl)-4-(N-(R or S)-(3,5-bis(trifluoromethyl)benzoyl)(methylamino)pentyl)-1-methanesulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine)

15 The title compound was prepared from 1'-(3-(S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl)-4-(R or S)-(methylamino)pentyl)-1-methanesulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine) (from Example 1, Step 7 above) using a procedure identical to Example 3 Step (b), substituting 3,5-bis(trifluoromethyl)benzoyl chloride for 3,5-dimethylbenzoyl chloride.

20 1H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>, ranges are given due to amide rotamers and line broadening) δ 1.38-3.00 (22H), 3.74 (s, 3H, N-SO<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub>), 6.40-7.41 (m, 10H).

Mass Spectrum (FAB): m/z 752 (M+H, <sup>37</sup>Cl + <sup>35</sup>Cl isotope, 40%), 750 (M+H, <sup>37</sup>Cl + <sup>37</sup>Cl isotope, 60%), 241 (100%).

### EXAMPLE 12

25

1'-(3-(S)-(3,4-Dichlorophenyl)-4-(R or S)-(3,5-dimethylbenzoyl(methyl-amino)pentyl)-1-methanesulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine)

30 The title compound was prepared from 1'-(3-(S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl)-4-(R or S)-(methylamino)pentyl)-1-methanesulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine) (from Example 1, Step 7 above) using a procedure identical to Example 3, Step (b).

- 90 -

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>, ranges are given due to amide rotamers and line broadening) δ 1.37-2.86 (28H), 3.74 (s, 3H, N-SO<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub>), 6.24-7.41 (m, 10H).

<sup>5</sup> Mass Spectrum (FAB): m/z 642 (M+H, <sup>37</sup>Cl + <sup>35</sup>Cl isotope, 70%), 644 (M+H, <sup>37</sup>Cl + <sup>37</sup>Cl isotope, 100%).

### EXAMPLE 13

<sup>10</sup> (1'-(3-(S)-(3,4-Dichlorophenyl)-4-(R or S)-(3,5-dichlorobenzoyl-methylamino)pentyl)-1-methanesulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine)

<sup>15</sup> The title compound was prepared from 1'-(3-(S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl)-4-(R or S)-(methylamino)pentyl)-1-methanesulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine) (from Example 1, Step 7 above) using a procedure identical to Example 3, Step (b), substituting 3,5-dichlorobenzoyl chloride for 3,5-dimethylbenzoyl chloride.

<sup>20</sup> <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>, ranges are given due to amide rotamers and line broadening) δ 1.38-2.93 (22H), 3.73 (s, 3H, N-SO<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub>), 6.53-7.42 (m, 10H).

<sup>25</sup> Mass Spectrum (FAB): m/z 684 (M+H, <sup>37</sup>Cl + <sup>35</sup>Cl isotope, 70%), 686 (M+H, <sup>37</sup>Cl + <sup>37</sup>Cl isotope, 100%).

### EXAMPLE 14

<sup>25</sup> 1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3-bromo-5-methylbenzoyl)-(methylamino)butyl)-1-methanesulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine)

#### Step A: 3-Bromo-5-methylbenzoic acid

<sup>30</sup> To a solution of 0.38 g (1.44 mmol) of 3-bromo-5-methylbenzyl bromide (prepared by NBS bromination of 3,5-dimethylbromobenzene) in 22 mL of MeCN and 50 mL of water was added 7.8 mL (28.8 mmol) of aqueous sodium hypochlorite (13% active Cl). The mixture was allowed to stand in an ultrasonic cleaning bath for 14 h. The reaction was acidified with HCl to pH 3 and extracted with CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>. The organic layer was washed with water, brine and dried

- 91 -

with Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>. The filtrate was concentrated and the residue which was a mixture of the desired acid and the aldehyde was dissolved in 3 mL of acetone. The solution was treated with 6 N Jones reagent until the orange color persisted. After stirring for 20 min the excess reagent was 5 destroyed by adding few drops of i-PrOH. The solution was diluted with water and extracted with CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>. The CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> layer was washed with brine, dried and the filtrate was concentrated. The residue was purified by prep TLC using 0.5:30:69.5 of HOAc:EtOAc:hexane to 10 isolate 0.14 g (45 %) of 3-bromo-5-methylbenzoic acid.

10

Step B: 1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3-bromo-5-methylbenzoyl)(methylamino))butyl)-1-methanesulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine)

15 3-Bromo-5-methylbenzoic acid was used in the acylation reaction according to the procedure of Example 3, Step B to obtain the title compound.

Mass Spectrum (CI) 696 (37Cl + 35Cl isotope), 694 (35Cl + 35Cl isotope).

20

## EXAMPLE 15

1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-Dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3,5-dimethylbenzoyl)-(methylamino))butyl)-1-(2-aminoacetyl)-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine)

25 A solution of 65 mg (0.31 mmol) of carbobenzyl-oxyglycine in 3 mL of CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> was treated with 82 mg (0.41 mmol) of 1-ethyl-3-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)carbodiimide and 56 mg (0.41 mmol) of 1-hydroxybenzotriazole and 42 mg (0.41 mmol) of N-methylmorpholine. After 10 min 123 mg (0.21 mmol) of 1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3,5-dimethylbenzoyl)(methylamino))-butyl)-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine) (Example 7) was added and the 30 reaction was stirred for 2 h. The mixture was diluted with CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> and washed with water, brine, dried and concentrated to give 0.184 g of residue. The residue in 10 drops of HOAc was dissolved in 3 mL of EtOH and the solution was hydrogenated on a Parr apparatus for 16 h.

- 92 -

The catalyst was filtered and washed with EtOAc. The filtrate was washed with 10% Na<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>3</sub>, brine and concentrated. The residue was purified by prep TLC using 30% MeOH-EtOAc to give 80 mg (59%) of the title compound.

5 Mass Spectrum (CI) 651 (<sup>37</sup>Cl + <sup>35</sup>Cl isotope), 649 (<sup>35</sup>Cl + <sup>35</sup>Cl isotope).

#### EXAMPLE 16

10 1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-Dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3,5-dimethylbenzoyl)-  
(methylamino))butyl)-1-methyl-spiro(indol-2-one-3,4'-piperidine)

Step A: 1,1'-Dimethyl-spiro(indol-2-one-3,4'-piperidine)

15 A solution of 0.1 g (0.68 mmol) of N-methyl-2-oxo-indole in 2 mL of THF was added to a well stirred suspension of 0.14 g (3.4 mmol) of NaH in 2 mL of THF with cooling in ice bath. After the gas evolution had stopped the cold bath was removed and the mixture was heated in a 50°C bath for another 15 min. The reaction was allowed to cool to room temperature and 0.68 mL of DMSO was added and more gas evolution was observed. After stirring for 10 min, the reaction 20 mixture was cooled in ice bath and 0.144 g of mechlorethamine hydrochloride was added. The mixture was warmed to room temperature and stirred overnight. Next morning, the reaction was quenched with water and extracted with EtOAc. The EtOAc extact was washed with brine, dried with Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub> and filtered. The filtrate was concentrated and the 25 residue was purified by prep TLC using 89:10:1 EtOAc:MeOH:Et<sub>3</sub>N to furnish 25 mg (15%) of the title compound.

Step B: 1-Methyl-spiro(indol-2-one-3,4'-piperidine)

30 A solution of 25 mg (0.11 mmol) of 1,1'-dimethyl-spiro(indol-2-one-3,4'-piperidine) (from Step A above) in 1 mL of dry dichloroethane was treated with 0.023 mL (0.22 mmol) of 1-chloroethyl chloroformate (ACECl) under a dry N<sub>2</sub> atmosphere. After 30 min at room temperature, the solution was kept in a 50°C bath for 30 min. The reaction mixture was cooled to room temperature, 2 mL of MeOH was added and reheated to 60°C. After 30 min the solution was cooled

- 93 -

and concentrated *in vacuo*. The residue was partitioned between water and EtOAc and the aqueous phase was adjusted to pH 9 by adding 1N NaOH. The layers were separated and the combined EtOAc solution was washed with brine and dried. The filtrate upon concentration gave 5 34 mg of a residue which was a mixture of the desired compound and the starting material, but was sufficiently pure to be used in the next reaction.

10 Step C: 1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-Dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3,5-dimethylbenzoyl)(methylamino)butyl)-1-methyl-spiro(indol-2-one-3,4'-piperidine)

15 A reaction of 49 mg (0.13 mmol) of 3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3,5-dimethylbenzoyl)methylamino)butanal (Example 5) with 34 mg of impure 1-methyl-spiro(indol-2-one-3,4'-piperidine) (from Step B) according to the procedure of Example 8, method B furnished 32 mg of the title compound after purification by prep TLC. Mass Spectrum (CI) 580 ( $^{37}\text{Cl} + 35\text{Cl}$  isotope), 578 ( $^{35}\text{Cl} + 35\text{Cl}$  isotope).

20 EXAMPLE 17

1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-Dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3,5-dichlorobenzoyl)-(methylamino)butyl)-1-methyl-spiro(isoindol-1-one-3,4'-piperidine) Mass Spectrum (CI) 622 ( $^{37}\text{Cl} + 35\text{Cl}$  isotope), 620 ( $^{35}\text{Cl} + 35\text{Cl}$  isotope).

25 EXAMPLE 18

1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-Dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3,5-dimethylbenzoyl)-(methylamino)butyl)-spiro(2-oxo-tetrahydroquinoline-4,4'-piperidine)

30 Step A: 1'-Trifluoroacetyl-spiro(1-indanone-3,4'-piperidine)

Cold trifluoroacetic acid (15 mL) and 0.6 mL of anisole were added to 2 g (6.6 mmol) of 1'-t-butoxycarbonyl-spiro(1-indanone-

- 94 -

3,4'-piperidine) and the resulting solution was stirred in ice bath for 1h. The reaction mixture was concentrated *in vacuo* and the residue was partitioned between CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> and 0.5 N NaOH. The organic layer was washed with brine, dried with Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub> and concentrated. The residual  
5 orange oil was dissolved in 10 mL of CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> and 1.92 mL (13.7 mmol) of Et<sub>3</sub>N, 1 mL (7.1 mmol) of trifluoroacetic anhydride and 3 crystals of DMAP were added. After stirring for 4 h, the reaction mixture was diluted with CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> and washed with water, brine and dried. The  
10 solution was filtered and the filtrate was concentrated to yield 2.0 g (quantitative) of the desired product as a solid.  
1H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 1.65 (d, 2H, J=14Hz), 2.05 (m, 2H), 2.67 (ABq, 2H), 2.89 (m, 1H), 3.28 (m, 1H), 4.11(d, 1H, J=14Hz), 4.67 (dt, 1H, J=14 and 2Hz), 7.5-7.8 (m, 4H).

15 Step B: 1'-Trifluoroacetyl-spiro-(2-oxo-1,2,3,4-tetrahydro-  
quinoline-4,4'-piperidine) and 1'-trifluoroacetyl-spiro-(1-  
20 oxo-1,2,3,4-tetrahydroisoquinoline-4,4'-piperidine)  
To a mixture of 1.09 g (16.8 mmol) of Sodium azide in 1.2 mL of water and 6.6 mL of CHCl<sub>3</sub> was added 0.46 mL of concentrated H<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub> (36 N) keeping the temperature between 0-5°C. (Caution!) After 10 min the cold bath was removed and the reaction was stirred for 3 h, at which time the CHCl<sub>3</sub> layer was separated from the aqueous layer. The CHCl<sub>3</sub> layer containing HN<sub>3</sub> was dried and the filtrate was added to a solution of 2 g (6.7 mmol) of 1'-trifluoroacetyl-spiro(1-  
25 indanone-3,4'-piperidine) (from Step A) in 7 mL of CHCl<sub>3</sub>. Concentrated H<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub> (1.8 mL) was added to this solution and the reaction was allowed to age for 30 min. The mixture was heated in a 45°C bath for 45 min and then stirred at room temperature for 16 h. Next morning, the reaction mixture was poured into ice and the layers  
30 were separated. The aqueous layer was neutralized with aq. NaOH and extracted with EtOAc. The combined organic phases were washed with brine, dried and concentrated. The residue was chromatographed using 50-80% EtOAc-CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> to isolate 0.34 g (16%) of 1'-trifluoroacetyl-spiro(2-oxo-1,2,3,4-tetrahydroquinoline-4,4'-piperidine) and 0.13 g of

- 95 -

1'-trifluoroacetyl-spiro(1-oxo-1,2,3,4-tetrahydroisoquinoline-4,4'-piperidine). In addition, 0.72 g (36%) of the starting indanone was recovered.

5  $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ ) Isomer A:  $\delta$  1.82 (m, 2H), 1.96 (m, 2H), 2.75 (ABq, 2 H,  $J=14\text{Hz}$ ), 3.16 (t, 1H), 3.46 (t, 1H), 3.9 (d, 1H), 4.42 (d, 1H), 6.8-7.3 (m, 4H), 8.49 (br s, 1H); Isomer B:  $\delta$  1.9-2.1 (m, 4H), 3.09 (t, 1H), 3.42 (m, 1H), 3.61 (ABq, 2H), 3.94 (d, 1H), 4.45 (d, 1H), 6.72 (br s, 1H), 7.3-7.6 (m, 3H), 8.11 (d, 1H).

10 **Step C:** Spiro-(2-oxo-1,2,3,4-tetrahydroquinoline-4,4'-piperidine)

To a solution of 0.3 g (0.97 mmol) of 1'-trifluoroacetyl-spiro-(2-oxo-1,2,3,4-tetrahydroquinoline-4,4'-piperidine) (from Step B) in 4 mL of MeOH was added 0.16 g (2.9 mmol) of KOH in 1 mL of water. After stirring the reaction for 16 H the solution was concentrated and the residue was partitioned between EtOAc and water. The EtOAc layer was washed with brine, dried with  $\text{Na}_2\text{SO}_4$  and concentrated to give 0.16 g (76%) of the title compound as a white solid.

15  $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  1.6-2.0 (m, 4H), 2.72 (s, 2H), 2.95 (m, 4H), 6.7-7.4 (m, 4H), 8.4 (br s, 1H).

**Step D:** 1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-Dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3,5-dimethylbenzoyl)(methylamino))butyl)-spiro(2-oxo-tetrahydroquinoline-4,4'-piperidine)

20 The title compound was obtained by reductive amination of 3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-((3,5-dimethylbenzoyl)methylamino)-butanal (Example 5) by spiro-(2-oxo-1,2,3,4-tetrahydroquinoline-4,4'-piperidine) obtained in Step C according to the procedure of Example 8, method B.

25 Mass Spectrum (CI) 580 ( $^{37}\text{Cl} + 35\text{Cl}$  isotope), 578( $^{35}\text{Cl} + 35\text{Cl}$  isotope).

- 96 -

EXAMPLE 19

1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-Dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3,5-dichlorobenzoyl)(methylamino))butyl)-1-methyl-spiro(2-oxo-tetrahydroquinoline-4,4'-piperidine)

---

Step A: 1-Methyl-spiro-(2-oxo-1,2,3,4-tetrahydroquinoline-4,4'-piperidine)

---

To a solution of 0.15 g (0.48 mmol) of 1'-trifluoroacetyl-spiro-(2-oxo-1,2,3,4-tetrahydroquinoline-4,4'-piperidine) (from Example 18, Step B) in 1.7 mL of DMF was added 19 mg (0.77 mmol) of 95% NaH at 0°C. After 15 min 0.063 mL (1 mmol) of methyl iodide was added and the reaction was allowed to warm to room temperature. After stirring for 16 H the reaction was not complete, so an additional 0.015 mL of methyl iodide was added and the solution was heated in a 45°C bath. After 2 H the reaction was cooled to room temperature and partitioned between EtOAc and water. The EtOAc layer was washed with brine, dried and the filtrate was concentrated. The residue was purified by prep TLC using 33% EtOAc-hexane to provide 1-methyl-1'-trifluoroacetyl-spiro-(2-oxo-1,2,3,4-tetrahydroquinoline-4,4'-piperidine). Hydrolysis of this trifluoroacetamide as described in Example 55, Step C furnished 71 mg (64%) of the title compound.  $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  1.61 (d, 2H), 1.92 (m, 2H), 2.74 (s, 2H), 2.98 (m, 4H), 3.36 (s, 3H), 7.0-7.4 (m, 4H).

25

Step B: 1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3,5-dichlorobenzoyl)(methylamino))butyl)-1-methyl-spiro(2-oxo-tetrahydroquinoline-4,4'-piperidine)

---

The title compound was prepared by reaction of the amine from Step A and 3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-((3,5-dichlorobenzoyl)methylamino)butanal as described in Example 18, Step D. Mass Spectrum (CI) 636 ( $^{37}\text{Cl} + ^{35}\text{Cl}$  isotope), 634 ( $^{35}\text{Cl} + ^{35}\text{Cl}$  isotope).

EXAMPLE 20

- 97 -

4-Bromo-2-(S)-(4-fluorophenyl)-1-(N-(3,5-bistrifluoromethylbenzoyl)methylamino)butane.

5 Step A: 3-(S)-(4-Fluorophenyl)-4-(N-(3,5-bistrifluoromethylbenzoyl)methylamino)butanol.

A solution of 1.67 g (3.84 mmol) of 3-((S)-(4-fluorophenyl)-4-(N-(3,5-bistrifluoromethylbenzoyl)methylamino)butanal (prepared from 4-fluorophenylacetic acid as described by J. Hale et. al., *Bioorganic & Medicinal Chemistry Letters* 1993,3, 319-322) in 16 mL of absolute ethanol at 0 °C was treated with 172 mg (4.55 mmol) of sodium borohydride. After stirring for 1 h at room temperature, the reaction was quenched with saturated NH<sub>4</sub>Cl and extracted twice with ethyl acetate. The combined organic layers were washed with brine, dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>) and evaporated to give 1.59 g of residual oil. Purification on a silica gel flash column (30:70 then 50:50 ethyl acetate:hexanes) provided 1.21 g (72%) of the title compound as a viscous oil.

20 Mass Spectrum (Cl/NH<sub>3</sub>) M+H= 438.

Step B: 4-Bromo-2-(S)-(4-fluorophenyl)-1-(N-(3,5-bistrifluoromethylbenzoyl)methylamino)butane.

25 To a solution of 1.19 g (2.72 mmol) of 3-(S)-(4-fluorophenyl)-4-(N-(3,5-bistrifluoromethylbenzoyl)methylamino)butanol in 20 mL of acetonitrile was added 1.49 g (3.53 mmol) of triphenylphosphine dibromide. After 1.5 h the reaction was partitioned between ethyl acetate and water. The organic layer was washed with brine, dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>) and concentrated to give 2.33 g of crude white solid.

30 Purification on a silica gel flash column (30:70 ethyl acetate:hexanes) gave 944 mg. (69%) of the desired bromide as a viscous oil.

Mass Spectrum (Cl/NH<sub>3</sub>) M+H=500, 502 (<sup>79,81</sup>Br isotope).

EXAMPLE 21

- 98 -

1'-(3-(S)-(4-Fluorophenyl)-4-(N-(3,5-bistrifluoromethylbenzoyl)-(methylamino))butyl)-1-acetyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine).

5 To 40 mg (0.08 mmol) of the bromide prepared in Example 20, Step B and 0.21 ul (0.12 mmol) of N,N-diisopropylethylamine in 0.5 mL of acetonitrile was added 37 mg (0.16 mmol) of 1-acetyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine). The resultant mixture was heated in a tightly capped vial at 50 °C for four days. The solvent was evaporated and the  
10 residue was purified on a 1000 micron silica gel prep plate (93:5:2 ethyl acetate:methanol:triethylamine) to furnish 46.6 mg (90%) of the title compound as a white foam.

15 Mass Spectrum (CI/NH3) M+H=650.

20 The compounds in Examples 22-26 were prepared as in Example 21 from the requisite bromide, prepared from the corresponding phenylacetic acid as described in Example 20, and the required 1-  
substituted-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine).

### EXAMPLE 22

25 1'-(3-(S)-(3-Chlorophenyl)-4-(N-(3,5-bistrifluoromethylbenzoyl)-(methylamino))butyl)-1-acetyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine).

30 Mass Spectrum (CI/NH3) M+H= 666, 668 ( $^{35,37}\text{Cl}$ -isotope).

### EXAMPLE 23

- 99 -

1'-(3-(S)-(4-Chlorophenyl)-4-(N-(3,5-bistrifluoromethylbenzoyl)-(methylamino))butyl)-1-acetyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine).

5 Mass Spectrum (CI/NH3) M+H= 666, 668 ( $^{35,37}\text{Cl}$ -isotope).

EXAMPLE 24

10 1'-(3-(S)-(3,4-Difluorophenyl)-4-(N-(3,5-bistrifluoromethylbenzoyl)-(methylamino))butyl)-1-acetyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine).

Mass Spectrum (CI/NH3) M+H= 668.

15

EXAMPLE 25

20 1'-(3-(S)-(3,4-Methylenedioxyphenyl)-4-(N-(3,5-bistrifluoromethylbenzoyl)-(methylamino))butyl)-1-methanesulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine).

Mass Spectrum (CI/NH3) M+H=712.

25

EXAMPLE 26

30 1'-(3-(RS)-(3,5-Dichlorophenyl)-4-(N-(3,5-bistrifluoromethylbenzoyl)-(methylamino))butyl)-1-methanesulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine).

Mass Spectrum (CI/NH3) M+H=736, 738 ( $^{35,37}\text{Cl}$ -isotope).

- 100 -

EXAMPLE 27

5 1'-(3-(S)-(4-Chlorophenyl)-4-(N-(3,5-bistrifluoromethylbenzoyl)-  
(methylamino))butyl)-spiro(2,3-dihydrobenzothiophene-3,4'-  
piperidine).

10 The title compound was prepared as in Example 21 from 4-bromo-2-  
(S)-(4-chlorophenyl)-1-(N-(3,5-  
bistrifluoromethylbenzoyl)methylamino)butane and spiro(2,3-  
dihydrobenzothiophene-3,4'-piperidine) hydrochloride except that 3 eq.  
of diisopropylethylamine were used.

15 Mass Spectrum (CI/NH3) M+H=641,643 ( $^{35,37}\text{Cl}$ -isotope).

EXAMPLE 28

20 1'-(3-(RS)-(4-Pyridyl)-4-(N-(3,5-bistrifluoromethylbenzoyl)-  
(methylamino))butyl)-1-acetyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine).

25 The title compound was prepared from 3-(S)-(4-pyridyl)-4-(N-(3,5-  
bistrifluoromethylbenzoyl)methylamino)butanal (prepared from 4-  
pyridylacetic acid as described by J. Hale et. al., *Bioorganic &*  
*Medicinal Chemistry Letters* **1993**, 3, 319-322) by reductive amination  
as described in Example 2.

Mass Spectrum (CI/NH3) M+H=633.

30

EXAMPLE 29

1'-(3-(S)-(3,4-Dichlorophenyl)-4-(N-(3,5-dimethylbenzoyl)-  
(ethylamino))butyl)-1-methanesulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine).

- 101 -

Step A: 4-Bromo-2-(S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl)-1-(N-(3,5-dimethylbenzoyl)methylamino)butane.

5 The title compound was prepared as in Example 20, Steps A and B, from 3-(S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl)-4-(N-(3,5-dimethylbenzoyl)ethylamino)butanal (prepared from 3,4-dichlorophenylacetic acid as described by J. Hale et. al., *(Bioorganic & Medicinal Chemistry Letters* 1993, 3, 319-322) using ethylamine rather than methylamine to form the intermediate amide).

10

Mass Spectrum (Cl/NH<sub>3</sub>) M = 454, 456 (<sup>79,81</sup>Br isotope).

15 Step B: 1'-(3-(S)-(3,4-Dichlorophenyl)-4-(N-(3,5-dimethylbenzoyl)-(ethylamino))butyl)-1-methanesulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine).

20

The title compound was prepared from the bromide prepared in Step A and 1-acetyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine) as described in Example 21.

### EXAMPLE 30

25

5-Fluoro-spiro(2,3-dihydrobenzofuran-3,4'-piperidine) hydrochloride salt

30

Step 1) 4-(2,5-Difluorophenyl)-4-methoxycarbonyl-1-methylpiperidine

Methyl 2,5-difluorophenylacetate (4.8 g, 26 mmol) and mechlorethamine hydrochloride (5.0 g, 26 mmol) in DMSO (15 mL) and THF (50 mL) at 0°C was carefully treated with NaH (2.5 g, 104 mmol). The reaction was gradually warmed to reflux over 1 h and

- 102 -

refluxed further for 1 h. The reaction was cooled to 0°C, and 6N HCl (25 mL) was slowly added. The reaction was diluted with 1N HCl (200 mL) and washed with hexane (200 mL). The aqueous layer was cooled to 0°C and adjusted to pH 12 with solid K<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>3</sub>. The product was  
5 extracted with ethyl acetate (200 mL), washed with brine (100 mL), dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>), and concentrated to 4.1 g (59%) of the title compound as an oil.

10 <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 7.34 (dq, 1H), 6.88 (m, 1H) 6.78 (ddd, 1H) 6.69 (minor NMe invertomer, dm), 6.59 (minor NMe invertomer, dd), 3.69 (s, 3H), 3.80 (minor invertomer, s), 2.71 (d, 2H), 2.48 (d, 2H), 2.38 (t, 2H), 2.25 (s, 3H), 2.10 (t, 2H) ppm.

15 Step 2) 4-(2,5-Difluorophenyl)-4-hydroxymethyl-1-methylpiperidine

EtOH (5.1 mL, 86 mmol) was added to 0.5 M LiAlH<sub>4</sub> in glyme (82 mL, 41 mmol) at 0°C. 4-(2,5-difluorophenyl)-4-methoxycarbonyl-1-methylpiperidine (3.45 g, 12.8 mmol) in glyme (4 mL) was added.  
20 Saturated aqueous sodium potassium tartrate (50 mL) was added along with Celite (10 g), and the mixture was mechanically stirred 1 h at room temp. The slurry was filtered, and the organic layer was extracted with 1N HCl. The HCl was washed with EtOAc and then basified with 3N NaOH. The product was extracted with CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>,  
25 washed with 20% brine, dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>), and concentrated to a crude solid, which was recrystallized (EtOAc) to yield 1.46 g (52%) of the title compound as colorless crystals.

30 <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 7.28 (dt, 1H, J =7,9 Hz), 6.88 (ddd, 1H, J=3,9,9 Hz), 6.81 (ddd, J=3,9,13 Hz), 3.76 (s, 2H), 2.59 (m, 2H), 2.32-2.20 (m, 4H), 2.23 (s, 3H), 1.96 (t, 2H, J=5 Hz) ppm.

- 103 -

Step 3) 5-Fluoro-1'-methyl-spiro(2,3-dihydrobenzofuran-3,4'-piperidine)

5 NaH (158 mg, 6.56 mmol) was added to 4-(2,5-difluorophenyl)-4-hydroxymethyl-1-methylpiperidine (1.45 g, 6.56 mmol) in DMF (20 mL). The slurry was heated to 90°C for 6 h. The reaction was diluted with hexane (200 mL), washed with water (200 mL), brine (50 mL), dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>), and concentrated to yield 1.21 g (92%) of the title compound as a white crystalline solid;

10

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 6.98 (dd, 1H), 6.54 (dt, 1H), 6.48 (dd, 1H), 4.37 (s, 2H), 2.84 (m, 2H), 2.31 (s, 3H), 1.97 (4H, pentuplet), 1.71 (m, 2H) ppm.

15

Step 4) 5-Fluoro-spiro(2,3-dihydrobenzofuran-3,4'-piperidine) hydrochloride salt

20 5-fluoro-1'-methyl-spiro(2,3-dihydrobenzofuran-3,4'-piperidine) (1.21 g, 5.48 mmol) in 1,2-dichloroethane (12 mL) at room temp was treated with 2-chloroethyl chloroformate (1 mL, 9 mmol). A white precipitate formed, and the reaction was refluxed 2 h. MeOH (12 mL) was added and refluxing was continued for 2 h. The reaction was concentrated to a crude solid, which was triturated with EtOAc (5 mL) and filtered to 25 yield 1.27 g (95%) of the title compound as a white crystalline solid.

30

Reaction of 5-fluoro-spiro(2,3-dihydrobenzofuran-3,4'-piperidine) hydrochloride with 3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(t-butoxycarbonyl)-(methylamino))butanal according to the procedure

- 104 -

given in Example 8, Method B gave 1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(t-butoxycarbonyl)-(methylamino))butyl)-5-fluoro-spiro(2,3-dihydrobenzofuran-3,4'-piperidine). Removal of the BOC group and benzamide formation according to the procedure given in Example 3, 5 Steps A and B afforded the compounds listed in Examples 31-36:

### EXAMPLE 31

10

1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-Dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3,5-dichlorobenzoyl)-(methylamino))butyl)-5-fluoro-spiro(2,3-dihydrobenzofuran-3,4'-piperidine)

15 Mass spectrum (CI): m/z = 611.2 ( $^{35}\text{Cl} + ^{35}\text{Cl}$  isotope + H $^+$ ), 613.2 ( $^{37}\text{Cl} + ^{35}\text{Cl}$  isotope + H $^+$ ).

### EXAMPLE 32

20

1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-Dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(4-fluoro-1-naphthoyl)-(methylamino))butyl)-5-fluoro-spiro(2,3-dihydrobenzofuran-3,4'-piperidine)

25

Mass spectrum (CI): m/z = 609.3 ( $^{35}\text{Cl} + ^{35}\text{Cl}$  isotope + H $^+$ ), 611.3 ( $^{37}\text{Cl} + ^{35}\text{Cl}$  isotope + H $^+$ ).

### EXAMPLE 33

30

1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-Dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3-chlorobenzoyl)-(methylamino))butyl)-5-fluoro-spiro(2,3-dihydrobenzofuran-3,4'-piperidine)

- 105 -

Mass spectrum (CI): m/z = 575.2 ( $^{35}\text{Cl} + ^{35}\text{Cl}$  isotope + H $^+$ ), 577.2 ( $^{37}\text{Cl} + ^{35}\text{Cl}$  isotope + H $^+$ ), 579.2 ( $^{37}\text{Cl} + ^{37}\text{Cl}$  isotope + H $^+$ ).

5

EXAMPLE 34

10 1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-Dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3,5-dimethylbenzoyl)-(methylamino))butyl)-5-fluoro-spiro(2,3-dihydrobenzofuran-3,4'-piperidine)

15 Mass spectrum (CI): m/z = 569.3 ( $^{35}\text{Cl} + ^{35}\text{Cl}$  isotope + H $^+$ ), 571.3 ( $^{37}\text{Cl} + ^{35}\text{Cl}$  isotope + H $^+$ ).

EXAMPLE 35

20

1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-Dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3-methylbenzoyl)-(methylamino))butyl)-5-fluoro-spiro(2,3-dihydrobenzofuran-3,4'-piperidine)

25 Mass spectrum (CI): m/z = 555.3 ( $^{35}\text{Cl} + ^{35}\text{Cl}$  isotope + H $^+$ ), 557.3 ( $^{37}\text{Cl} + ^{35}\text{Cl}$  isotope + H $^+$ ).

EXAMPLE 36

30

1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-Dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(benzoyl)-(methylamino))butyl)-5-fluoro-spiro(2,3-dihydrobenzofuran-3,4'-piperidine)

- 106 -

Mass spectrum (CI):  $m/z = 541.3$  ( $^{35}\text{Cl} + ^{35}\text{Cl}$  isotope +  $\text{H}^+$ ),  $543.3$  ( $^{37}\text{Cl} + ^{35}\text{Cl}$  isotope +  $\text{H}^+$ ).

5

Preparation of spiro(2,3-dihydrobenzofuran-3,4'-piperidine) hydrochloride was carried out by analogy to the procedure given in Example 30, starting with methyl 2-fluorophenylacetate. Reaction of spiro(2,3-dihydrobenzofuran-3,4'-piperidine) hydrochloride with 3-(S)-  
10 (3,4-dichlorophenyl)-4-(t-butoxycarbonyl-methylamino)butanal according to the procedure given in Example 8, Step B gave 1'-(3-((S)-  
15 (3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(t-butoxycarbonyl)-(methylamino))butyl)-spiro(2,3-dihydrobenzofuran-3,4'-piperidine). Removal of the BOC group and benzamide formation according to the procedure given in Example 3, Steps A and B afforded the compounds listed in Examples 37-43:

#### EXAMPLE 37

20

1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-Dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(benzoyl)-(methylamino))butyl)-  
25 spiro(2,3-dihydrobenzofuran-3,4'-piperidine)

Mass spectrum (CI):  $m/z = 523.1$  ( $^{35}\text{Cl} + ^{35}\text{Cl}$  isotope +  $\text{H}^+$ ).

#### EXAMPLE 38

30

1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-Dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3-methylbenzoyl)-(methylamino))butyl)-spiro(2,3-dihydrobenzofuran-3,4'-piperidine)

- 107 -

Mass spectrum (CI):  $m/z = 537.2$  ( $^{35}\text{Cl} + ^{35}\text{Cl}$  isotope +  $\text{H}^+$ ),  $539.2$  ( $^{37}\text{Cl} + ^{35}\text{Cl}$  isotope +  $\text{H}^+$ ).

5

EXAMPLE 39

1'-((S)-(3,4-Dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3,5-dimethylbenzoyl)-(methylamino))butyl-spiro(2,3-dihydrobenzofuran-3,4'-piperidine)

10 Mass spectrum (CI):  $m/z = 551.2$  ( $^{35}\text{Cl} + ^{35}\text{Cl}$  isotope +  $\text{H}^+$ ),  $553.2$  ( $^{37}\text{Cl} + ^{35}\text{Cl}$  isotope +  $\text{H}^+$ ).

15

EXAMPLE 40

1'-((S)-(3,4-Dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3-chlorobenzoyl)-(methylamino))butyl-spiro(2,3-dihydrobenzofuran-3,4'-piperidine)

20 Mass spectrum (CI):  $m/z = 557.0$  ( $^{35}\text{Cl} + ^{35}\text{Cl}$  isotope +  $\text{H}^+$ ).

EXAMPLE 41

25 1'-((S)-(3,4-Dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3,5-dichlorobenzoyl)-(methylamino))butyl-spiro(2,3-dihydrobenzofuran-3,4'-piperidine)

Mass spectrum (CI):  $m/z = 591.0$  ( $^{35}\text{Cl} + ^{35}\text{Cl}$  isotope +  $\text{H}^+$ ),  $593.1$  ( $^{37}\text{Cl} + ^{35}\text{Cl}$  isotope +  $\text{H}^+$ ).

30

EXAMPLE 42

- 108 -

1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-Dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(4-fluoro-1-naphthoyl)-(methylamino))butyl)-spiro(2,3-dihydrobenzofuran-3,4'-piperidine)

5 Mass spectrum (CI): m/z = 591.3 ( $^{35}\text{Cl} + ^{35}\text{Cl}$  isotope +  $\text{H}^+$ ), 593.2 ( $^{37}\text{Cl} + ^{35}\text{Cl}$  isotope +  $\text{H}^+$ ).

10

#### EXAMPLE 44

1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-Dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(t-butoxycarbonyl)-(methylamino))butyl)-spiro(2,3-dihydrobenzothiophene-3,4'-piperidine)

15 Step 1) 1-t-Butoxycarbonyl-3-hydroxy-4-methylenepiperidine

n-Butyl lithium (9.57 mL, 2.45M in hexane, 23.7 mmol) was added to a -78°C solution of diisopropylamine (3.32 mL, 23.7 mmol) in THF (15 mL). After 30 min at -78°C, methyl phenyl sulfoxide (3.32 g, 23.7 mmol) in THF (4 mL) was added. The solution was warmed to 0°C and cooled back down to -78°C. 1-t-butoxycarbonyl-4-piperidinone (4.69 g, 23.7 mmol) in THF (20 mL) was added. The reaction was warmed to room temp, quenched by addition of solid NH<sub>4</sub>Cl, concentrated in vacuo, and partitioned between H<sub>2</sub>O (100 mL) and EtOAc (100 mL).  
20 The organic layer was washed with H<sub>2</sub>O (50 mL) brine (50 mL), dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>), and concentrated in vacuo. The resultant oil was heated at 80°C in t-butanol (50 mL) with potassium t-butoxide (3.4g, 30 mmol) for 2 h. Solid NH<sub>4</sub>Cl was added, and the reaction was concentrated in vacuo and partitioned between H<sub>2</sub>O (100 mL) and EtOAc (100 mL).  
25 The EtOAc was washed with brine (50 mL), dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>), concentrated in vacuo and purified by column chromatography (silica gel 60, 0-50% EtOAc/hexane) to yield 4.47 g (79%) of the title compound as a crystalline solid.  
30

- 109 -

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ 5.21 (d, 1H), 4.96 (s, 1H), 4.77 (s, 1H), 3.82 (t, 2H), 3.67 (dt, 1H), 2.83 (dt, 1H), 2.77-2.50 (brd d, 1H), 2.26 (dt, 1H), 2.01 (ddd, 1H), 1.38 (s, 9H) ppm.

5

Step 2) 1-t-Butoxycarbonyl-3,4-didehydro-4-(chloromethyl)piperidine

To 1-t-butoxycarbonyl-3-hydroxy-4-methylenepiperidine (5.329 g, 25.1 mmol) in toluene (120 mL) and 2,6-lutidine (3.1 mL, 26 mmol) at 0°C <sup>10</sup> was added SOCl<sub>2</sub> (2.0 mL, 26 mmol). The reaction was heated at 40°C for 30 min, cooled to 0°C, washed with 0°C 1N HCl (100 mL), 0.1 N HCl (100 mL), H<sub>2</sub>O (100 mL), brine (50 mL), dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>), and concentrated in vacuo to afford 5.18 g (89%) of allylic chloride as a yellow oil.

15

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 5.78 (s, 1H), 4.04 (s, 2H), 3.95 (s, 2H), 3.55 (t, 2H, J=6 Hz), 2.24 (s, 2H), 1.45 (s, 9H) ppm.

20

Step 3) 1-t-Butoxycarbonyl-4-((2-bromophenyl)thio)methyl-1,2,5,6-tetrahydropyridine

25

The allylic chloride (330 mg, 1.43 mmole) was dissolved in acetone (10 mL) and 2-bromothiophenol (172 ml, 1.43 mmole) and K<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>3</sub> (390 mg, 2.86 mmole) were added. The reaction mixture was heated to 60°C for 1 h and then filtered through silica gel (ether). The organic layer was concentrated in vacuo and purified by column chromatography (silica gel 60, hexanes/ethyl acetate 10/1) to give the title compound in 84% yield (460 mg).

30

Step 4) 1'-t-Butoxycarbonyl-spiro(2,3-dihydrobenzothiophene-3,4'-piperidine).

- 110 -

The intermediate adduct from step 3 above (450 mg, 1.17 mmole) was dissolved in benzene (60 mL) and AIBN (10 mg) and tributyltin hydride (644 mL, 2.39 mmole) were added. This mixture was refluxed for 2 h and concentrated. The residue was dissolved in Et<sub>2</sub>O and Br<sub>2</sub> was added until the reaction solution turned to a brownish color. To this brownish solution at room temp was added DBU (650 mL) dropwise. The resulting cloudy solution was filtered though silica gel and washed with Et<sub>2</sub>O. The Et<sub>2</sub>O solution was concentrated and the residue was purified by radial chromatography (silic gel 60, 10/1 hexanes/EtOAc) to give the title compound (157 mg) in 43% yield.

<sup>15</sup> <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 7.18 (d, 7 Hz, 1 H), 7.12 (t, 7 Hz, 1 H), 7.06 (m, 2 H), 4.11(m, 2 H), 3.30 (s, 3 H), 2.89 (m, 2 H), 1.79 (m, 4 H), 1.47 (s, 9 H) ppm.

<sup>20</sup> Removal of the BOC group according to the procedure given in Example 3, Step A followed by reaction with 3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(t-butoxycarbonyl)-(methylamino))butanal according to the procedure given in Example 8, Method B gave 1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(t-butoxycarbonyl)-(methylamino))butyl)-spiro(2,3-dihydrobenzothiophene-3,4'-piperidine). Removal of the BOC group and benzamide formation according to the procedures described in Example 3, Steps A and B gave the compounds listed in Examples 45-46:

<sup>25</sup>

#### EXAMPLE 45

<sup>30</sup>

1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-Dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3,5-dimethylbenzoyl)-(methylamino))butyl)-spiro(2,3-dihydrobenzothiophene-3,4'-piperidine)

- 111 -

Mass spectrum (CI): m/z = 567.2 ( $^{35}\text{Cl} + ^{35}\text{Cl}$  isotope + H $^+$ ), 569.2 ( $^{37}\text{Cl} + ^{35}\text{Cl}$  isotope + H $^+$ ).

5

EXAMPLE 46

10

1'-(3-((S)-(4-Chlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3,5-dimethylbenzoyl)-(methylamino))butyl)-spiro(2,3-dihydrobenzothiophene-3,4'-piperidine)

Mass spectrum (CI): m/z = 533 ( $^{35}\text{Cl} + ^{35}\text{Cl}$  isotope + H $^+$ ), 535 ( $^{37}\text{Cl} + ^{35}\text{Cl}$  isotope + H $^+$ ).

15

EXAMPLE 47

20

1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-Dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(t-butoxycarbonyl)-(methylamino))butyl)-spiro(2,3-dihydrobenzothiophene-3,4'-piperidine)-1-oxide.

25

1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-Dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(t-butoxycarbonyl)-(methylamino))butyl)-spiro(2,3-dihydrobenzothiophene-3,4'-piperidine) (222 mg, 415  $\mu\text{mol}$ ) in CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> (500  $\mu\text{L}$ ) at -78°C was treated with a solution of m-chloroperbenzoic acid (86 mg, 498  $\mu\text{mol}$ ) in CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> (1 mL). The reaction was poured into 0°C saturated aqueous NaHSO<sub>3</sub>. The organic layer was washed with saturated aqueous NaHCO<sub>3</sub> (1 mL), brine (1 mL), dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>), concentrated in vacuo and purified by column chromatography (silica gel 60, 0-100% acetone/CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>) to yield 54.3 mg (24%) of the title compound as a white foam.

30

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (500 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>)  $\delta$  7.84 (d, 1H, J=7.5 Hz), 7.60 (t, 1H, J=7.5 Hz), 7.48 (t, 1H, J=7.5 Hz), 7.44 (m, 1H), 7.39 (dd, 1H, J=2.0, 8.5 Hz), 7.32 (m, 1H), 7.10-7.04 (rotamer multiplets, 1H), 3.6-3.2 (m, 2H), 3.34, 3.32 (two doublets of one diastereomer, 1H), 3.16, 3.14 (two

- 112 -

doublets of other diastereomer, 1H), 3.1-2.8 (m, 3H), 2.75-2.65 (rotamer singlets, 3H), 2.3-1.7 (m, 10 H), 1.42 (s, 9H) ppm.

5

#### EXAMPLE 48

10 1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-Dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(4-fluoro-1-naphthylmethyl)-(methylamino))butyl)-spiro(2,3-dihydrobenzothiophene-3,4'-piperidine)-1-oxide.

15 The title compound was prepared by oxidizing 1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(t-butoxycarbonyl)-(methylamino))butyl)-spiro(2,3-dihydrobenzothiophene-3,4'-piperidine) as described in Example 47 above, and then removing the BOC group and N-benzoylating according to the procedures given in Example 3, Steps A and B.

20 Mass spectrum (CI): m/z = 623.1 ( $^{35}\text{Cl} + ^{35}\text{Cl}$  isotope + H<sup>+</sup>).

#### EXAMPLE 49

25 1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-Dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(t-butoxycarbonyl)-(methylamino))butyl)-spiro(2,3-dihydrobenzothiophene-3,4'-piperidine)-1,1-dioxide.

30 To 1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(t-butoxycarbonyl)-(methylamino))butyl)-spiro(2,3-dihydrobenzothiophene-3,4'-piperidine) (102 mg, 191  $\mu\text{mol}$ ) in MeOH (0.8 mL) at 0°C was added Oxone (176 mg, 287  $\mu\text{L}$ ) in water (0.4 mL). After 30 min at room temp, the reaction was filtered through a plug of silica gel and concentrated to yield 39.5 mg (36%) of the title compound as a white foam.

- 113 -

10  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (500 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  7.72 (d, 1H,  $J=7.5$  Hz), 7.66 (t, 1H,  $J=7.5$  Hz), 7.51 (t, 1H,  $J=7.3$  Hz), 7.39 (t, 1H,  $J=8.3$  Hz), 3.65-3.25 (m, 2H), 3.38 (s, 2H), 3.15-2.85 (m, 3H), 2.76, 2.66 (rotamer singlets, 3H), 5 2.25 (m, 2H), 2.15-1.95 (m, 3H), 1.95-1.65 (m, 5H), 1.40 (s, 9H) ppm.

### EXAMPLE 50

10

1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-Dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3,5-dimethylbenzoyl)-(methylamino))butyl)-spiro(2,3-dihydrobenzothiophene-3,4'-piperidine)-1,1-dioxide.

15

The title compound was prepared by removing the BOC group and N-benzoylating (according to the procedures given in Example 3, Steps A and B) the product from Example 49.

20

Mass spectrum (CI):  $m/z = 639.1$  ( $^{35}\text{Cl} + ^{35}\text{Cl}$  isotope +  $\text{H}^+$ ).

### EXAMPLE 51

25

1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-Dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3,5-dimethylbenzoyl)-(methylamino))butyl)-spiro(2,3-dihydrobenzothiophene-3,4'-piperidine)-1,1-dioxide.

30

To 1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3,5-dimethylbenzoyl)-(methylamino))butyl)-spiro(2,3-dihydrobenzothiophene-3,4'-piperidine) (10 mg, 20  $\mu\text{mol}$ ) in MeOH (0.1 mL) at 0°C was added 0.4 M aqueous Oxone (75  $\mu\text{L}$ , 30  $\mu\text{mol}$ ). The reaction was warmed to room temp and stirred overnight. The reaction was concentrated in vacuo, partitioned

- 114 -

between 1N NaOH (1 mL) and CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> (1 mL). The organic layer was concentrated and purified by column chromatography (silica gel 60, 0-100% acetone/CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>) to yield 9.0 mg (90%) of the title compound as a clear film.

5

Mass spectrum (CI): m/z = 599.1 (<sup>35</sup>Cl + <sup>35</sup>Cl isotope + H<sup>+</sup>), 601.1 (<sup>37</sup>Cl + <sup>35</sup>Cl isotope + H<sup>+</sup>).

10

EXAMPLE 52

15

1'-((S)-(4-Chlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3,5-dimethylbenzoyl)-(methylamino))butyl-spiro(2,3-dihydrobenzothiophene-3,4'-piperidine)-1,1-dioxide.

This compound was prepared according to the procedure given in Example 51 above.

20

Mass spectrum (CI): m/z = 567 (<sup>35</sup>Cl + <sup>35</sup>Cl isotope + H<sup>+</sup>), 565 (<sup>37</sup>Cl + <sup>35</sup>Cl isotope + H<sup>+</sup>).

25

EXAMPLE 53

30

1'-((S)-(4-Chlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3,5-dimethylbenzoyl)-(methylamino))butyl-spiro(2,3-dihydrobenzothiophene-3,4'-piperidine)-1-oxide.

To 1'-((S)-(4-chlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3,5-dimethylbenzoyl)-(methylamino))butyl-spiro(2,3-dihydrobenzothiophene-3,4'-piperidine) (25 mg, 47  $\mu$ mol) in MeOH (1.0 mL) at 0°C was added a solution of Oxone (38 mg, 61  $\mu$ mol) in H<sub>2</sub>O (1.0 mL). The reaction was stirred 2

- 115 -

min and quenched with 10% aqueous sodium bisulfite. The reaction mixture was diluted with H<sub>2</sub>O (10 mL), neutralized with sat. aqueous NaHCO<sub>3</sub> (15 mL), extracted with CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> (3 x 25 mL), washed with brine (10 mL), dried (Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>), concentrated in vacuo, and purified by column chromatography (silica gel 60, 5-8% MeOH/CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>) to yield 5 25 mg (99%) of a colorless solid; Mass spectrum (CI): m/z = 549 (35Cl + 35Cl isotope + H<sup>+</sup>), 551 (37Cl + 35Cl isotope + H<sup>+</sup>).

#### EXAMPLE 54

10 1'-(3-(S)-(4-Chlorophenyl)-4-(N-(3,5-bistrifluoromethylbenzoyl)-(methylamino))butyl)-spiro(2,3-dihydrobenzothiophene-3,4'-piperidine), 1-oxide.

15 The title compound was prepared by the oxone oxidation method described in Example 53.

Mass Spectrum (Cl/NH<sub>3</sub>) M+H=657, 659 (35,37Cl-isotope).

#### EXAMPLE 55

20 1'-(3-(S)-(4-Chlorophenyl)-4-(N-(3,5-bistrifluoromethylbenzoyl)-(methylamino))butyl)-spiro(2,3-dihydrobenzothiophene-3,4'-piperidine), 1, 1-dioxide.

25 The title compound was prepared by the oxone oxidation method described in Example 51.

Mass Spectrum (Cl/NH<sub>3</sub>) M+H=673, 675 (35,37Cl-isotope).

30 Substituted indoline spiropiperidine derivatives were obtained by employing substituted phenyl hydrazines and 1-benzyloxycarbonylpiperidine-4-carboxyaldehyde in the Fisher indole synthesis. When regioisomers were formed, they were separated as the 1'-benzyloxycarbonyl-1-methanesulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine) derivative by chromatography (silica gel 60, THF/hexane). Preparation

- 116 -

of a representative substituted spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidinium) hydrochloride is described below:

5

EXAMPLE 56

1'-Benzylloxycarbonyl-5-fluoro-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine)

10 A slurry of 4-fluorophenylhydrazine hydrochloride (6.504 g, 40 mmol), pyridine (6.56 ml, 80 mmol), toluene (360 mL), acetonitrile (40 mL), and N-benzylcarboxy-4-piperidine carboxyaldehyde (9.88g, 40 mmol) was maintained at 0°C for 1 h. Trifluoroacetic acid (18.5 mL, 240 mmol) was added, and the reaction was heated 20 h at 60°C. The reaction was cooled to 0°C, and methanol (40 mL) was added followed by NaBH4 (1.51 g, 40 mmol). The cooling bath was removed and 30% aqueous NH4OH (100 mL) was added. The organic layer was separated, washed with 5% aqueous NH4OH (100 mL) brine (50 mL), dried (MgSO4), and concentrated to a crude oil which was purified by column chromatography (SG 60 silica, 0-5% acetone/CH2Cl2) to yield 6.48 g (48%) of the title compound as a clear oil.

15

20

25 <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl3): δ 7.23-7.36 (m, 5H), 6.76-6.71 (m, 2H), 6.58 (dd, 1H, J=4.4, 8.0 Hz), 5.14 (s, 2H), 4.12 (br s, 2H), 3.49 (s, 2H), 2.95 (br s, 2H) 1.73 (br s, 4H) ppm.

EXAMPLE 57

30 Step 1) 1'-Benzylloxycarbonyl-5-fluoro-1-methanesulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine)

To a solution of 1'-benzylloxycarbonyl-5-fluoro-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine) (6.48 g, 19.0 mmol) in CH2Cl2 (19 mL) and pyridine (38

- 117 -

mmol, 3.1 mL) at 0°C was added methanesulfonyl chloride (19 mmol, 1.52 mL). The reaction was warmed to room temp., diluted with ethyl acetate (200 mL), washed with 1N aqueous HCl (100 mL) saturated aqueous NaHCO<sub>3</sub> (100 mL) brine (50 mL), dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>), and 5 concentrated to 7.81 g (98%) of the title compound as a red foam.

10 <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 7.35 (m, 5H), 7.32 (dd, 1H, J=4.2, 9.0 Hz), 6.90 (dt, 1H, J=2.7, 8.8 Hz), 6.81 (1H, dd, J=2.6, 8.2 Hz), 5.14 (s, 2H), 4.22 (br s, 2H), 3.84 (s, 2H), 2.92 (br s, 2H), 2.88 (s, 3H), 1.79 (br s, 2H), 1.69 (d, 2H, 13 Hz) ppm.

15 Step 2) 5-Fluoro-1-methanesulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine) hydrochloride salt

20 To 1'-benzyloxycarbonyl-5-fluoro-1-methanesulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine) (7.81 g, 18.7 mmol) in CHCl<sub>3</sub> (18 mL) at room temp. was added trimethylsilyl iodide (20.5 mmol, 2.93 ml). After 5 min, the rxn was cooled to 0°C, and a 5M solution of HCl in methanol/methyl acetate is added with vigorous stirring. The HCl solution was prepared by adding acetyl chloride (190 mmol, 14 ml) to methanol (20 mL) at 0°C. 40 ml of EtOAc was added, and the slurry was vigorously stirred at 0°C for 4 h. The solid was filtered off under dry nitrogen, washed with 0°C ethyl acetate (10 mL) and then with hexane (10 mL), and dried 25 under vacuum to yield 4.77 g (80%) of the title compound as a light pink solid.

30 <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ 8.85 (br s, 1H), 8.77 (br s, 1H), 7.26 (dd, 1H, J=4.4, 8.8 Hz), 7.11 (dt, 1H, J=2.8, 8.8 Hz), 7.02 (dd, 1H, J=2.8, 8.4 Hz), 3.97 (s, 3H), 3.30 (m, 2H), 3.06 (m, 2H), 3.06 (s, 3H), 2.04 (m, 2H), 1.83 (d 2H, J=14 Hz) ppm.

- 118 -

The substituted 1-methanesulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidinium) hydrochlorides could be reductively aminated with 3-(S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl)-4-(t-butoxycarbonyl-methylamino)butanal according to the procedure described in Example 8, Method B. Removal of the BOC group by the procedure given in Example 3, Step A provided intermediate secondary amine compounds described below which could then be benzoylated under conditions given in Example 3, Step B to give the indicated benzamide derivatives.

10

#### EXAMPLE 58

1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-Dichlorophenyl))-4-(methylamino)butyl)-1-methanesulfonyl-5-methoxy-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine)

15

$^1\text{H}$  NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, 400 MHz)  $\delta$  7.37 (d, 1H, J=8.2 Hz), 7.29 (d, 1H), 7.25 (d, 1H), 7.04 (dd, 1H, J=2.1, 8.3 Hz), 6.72 (m, 2H), 3.76 (s, 3H), 3.73 (s, 2H), 2.87 (m, 2H), 2.82 (s, 3H), 2.78 (d, 2H, J=7.1 Hz), 2.41 (s, 3H), 2.32-2.18 (m, 2H), 2.05-1.85 (m, 5H), 1.7 (m, 3H) ppm.

20

#### EXAMPLE 59

1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-Dichlorophenyl))-4-(methylamino)butyl)-1-methanesulfonyl-5-methyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine)

25

$^1\text{H}$  NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, 400 MHz)  $\delta$  7.37 (d, 1H, J=6.2 Hz), 7.30 (d, 1H, J=2.0 Hz), 7.24 (d, 1H, J=10 Hz), 7.05 (dd, 1H, J=2.0, 8.2 Hz), 7.00 (d, 1H, J= 8.8 Hz), 6.95 (s, 1H), 3.71 (dd, 2H, J=16, 5.4 Hz), 2.9 (m, 3H), 2.84 (s, 3H), 2.79 (d, 2H, J=7.4 Hz), 2.43 (s, 3H), 2.30 (s, 3H), 2.24 (m, 1H), 2.05-1.85 (m, 5H), 1.75-1.60 (m, 3H) ppm.

#### EXAMPLE 60

- 119 -

5-Chloro-1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(methylamino)butyl)-1-methanesulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine)

5       $^1\text{H}$  NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, 400 MHz)  $\delta$  7.39 (d, 1H, J=8.2 Hz), 7.29 (d, 1H, J=2.1), 7.24 (s, 1H), 7.17 (dd, 1H, J=2.2, 8.5 Hz), 7.11 (d, 1H, J=2.1 Hz), 7.05 (dd, 1H, J=2.0, 8.3 Hz), 3.76 (dd, 2H, J=4.5, 25 Hz), 3.18 (p, 1H), 2.10-2.85 (m, 4H), 2.87 (s, 3H), 2.61 (s, 3H), 2.47 (m, 1H), 2.34 (m, 1H), 2.15 (t, 1H), 2.04 (m, 2H), 1.95-1.70 (m, 5H) ppm.

10

### EXAMPLE 61

15      1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-Dichlorophenyl))-4-(methylamino)butyl)-5-fluoro-1-methanesulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine)

1 $^1\text{H}$  NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, 400 MHz)  $\delta$  7.38 (d, 1H), 7.3 (m, 2H), 7.05 (dd, 1H), 7.91-7.85 (m, 2H), 3.75 (dd, 2H), 3.0-2.8 (m, 3H), 2.81 (d, 2H), 2.43 (s, 3H), 2.42 (m, 1H), 2.34 (m, 1H), 2.1-1.8 (m, 5H), 1.7 (m, 3H) ppm.

20

### EXAMPLE 62

25      1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-Dichlorophenyl))-4-(methylamino)butyl)-7-fluoro-1-methanesulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine)

30       $^1\text{H}$  NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, 400 MHz)  $\delta$  7.38 (d, 1H), 7.29 (d, 1H), 7.05 (m, 2H), 6.95 (m, 2H), 3.99 (dd, 2H), 3.25 (s, 3H), 2.9 (m, 2H), 2.81 (t, 1H), 2.45 (s, 3H), 2.38 (m, 1H), 2.28 (m, 1H), 2.1-1.8 (m, 5H), 1.75 (m, 3H) ppm.

### EXAMPLE 63

- 120 -

1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-Dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3,5-dimethylbenzoyl)-(methylamino))butyl)-1-methanesulfonyl-5-methyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine)

5

Mass spectrum (FAB): m/z = 642.0 ( $^{35}\text{Cl} + ^{35}\text{Cl}$  isotope + H $^+$ ).

EXAMPLE 64

10

5-Chloro-1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3-methylbenzoyl)-(methylamino))butyl)-1-methanesulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine)

15

Mass spectrum (FAB): m/z = 648.1 ( $^{35}\text{Cl} + ^{35}\text{Cl}$  isotope + H $^+$ ).

EXAMPLE 65

20

1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-Dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3,5-dimethylbenzoyl)-(methylamino))butyl)-1-methanesulfonyl-5-methoxy-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine)

25

Mass spectrum (FAB): m/z = 658 ( $^{35}\text{Cl} + ^{35}\text{Cl}$  isotope + H $^+$ ).

EXAMPLE 66

30

1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-Dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3-methylbenzoyl)-(methylamino))butyl)-5-fluoro-1-methanesulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine)

- 121 -

Mass spectrum (CI): m/z = 632.2 ( $^{35}\text{Cl} + ^{35}\text{Cl}$  isotope + H $^+$ ), 634.2 ( $^{37}\text{Cl} + ^{35}\text{Cl}$  isotope + H $^+$ ).

5

EXAMPLE 67

10 1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-Dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3,5-dichlorobenzoyl)-(methylamino))butyl)-5-fluoro-1-methanesulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine)

Mass spectrum (FAB): m/z = 688.0 ( $^{37}\text{Cl} + ^{35}\text{Cl}$  isotope +  $^{35}\text{Cl}$  +  $^{35}\text{Cl}$  isotope + H $^+$ ).

15

EXAMPLE 68

20 1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-Dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3,5-dimethylbenzoyl)-(methylamino))butyl)-5-fluoro-1-methanesulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine)

25 Mass spectrum (CI): m/z = 646.1 ( $^{35}\text{Cl} + ^{35}\text{Cl}$  isotope + H $^+$ ), 648.1 ( $^{37}\text{Cl} + ^{35}\text{Cl}$  isotope + H $^+$ ).

EXAMPLE 69

30 1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-Dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3-chlorobenzoyl)-(methylamino))butyl)-5-fluoro-1-methanesulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine)

- 122 -

Mass spectrum (CI): m/z = 652.2 ( $^{35}\text{Cl} + ^{35}\text{Cl}$  isotope +  $^{35}\text{Cl} + ^{35}\text{Cl}$  isotope +  $\text{H}^+$ ), 656.2 ( $^{37}\text{Cl} + ^{35}\text{Cl}$  isotope +  $^{37}\text{Cl} + ^{35}\text{Cl}$  isotope +  $\text{H}^+$ ), 657.2 ( $^{37}\text{Cl} + ^{37}\text{Cl}$  isotope +  $^{37}\text{Cl} + ^{35}\text{Cl}$  isotope +  $\text{H}^+$ ), 658.2 ( $^{37}\text{Cl} + ^{37}\text{Cl}$  isotope +  $^{37}\text{Cl} + ^{37}\text{Cl}$  isotope +  $\text{H}^+$ ).

5

#### EXAMPLE 70

10 1'-((S)-(3,4-Dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3,5-bis(trifluoromethyl)benzoyl)-(methylamino))butyl-5-fluoro-1-methanesulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine)

15 Mass spectrum (CI): m/z = 754.1 ( $^{35}\text{Cl} + ^{35}\text{Cl}$  isotope +  $\text{H}^+$ ), 756.1 ( $^{37}\text{Cl} + ^{35}\text{Cl}$  isotope +  $\text{H}^+$ ).

#### EXAMPLE 71

20 1'-((S)-(3,4-Dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3,5-dimethylbenzoyl)-(methylamino))butyl-7-fluoro-1-methanesulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine)

25 Mass spectrum (CI): m/z = 646.1 ( $^{35}\text{Cl} + ^{35}\text{Cl}$  isotope +  $\text{H}^+$ ), 648.1 ( $^{37}\text{Cl} + ^{35}\text{Cl}$  isotope +  $\text{H}^+$ ).

#### EXAMPLE 72

30 1-Acetyl-1'-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-t-butoxycarbonyl)-(methylamino))butyl-5-fluoro-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine)

To 1'-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-t-butoxycarbonyl)-(methylamino))butyl-5-fluoro-1-methanesulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine) (1.32 g 2.15 mmol) in toluene (5 mL) at 0°C was added

- 123 -

3.4M Red-Al/toluene (5.1 mL, 17.2 mmol). After 4 h at room temp, the reaction was cooled to 0°C and quenched by cautious addition of 1N aqueous NaOH (2 mL). Cold saturated aqueous sodium potassium tartrate (30 mL) was added, and the biphasic mixture was mechanically stirred at 0°C for 1 h. The product was extracted with toluene (3 x 10 mL), washed with 50% saturated aqueous sodium potassium tartrate (10 mL), H<sub>2</sub>O (10 mL), brine (10 mL), dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>), and concentrated to roughly 5 mL volume, and cooled to 0°C. Pyridine (705 µL, 8.6 mmol) and acetic anhydride (410 µL, 4.3 mmol) were added. After 16 hours at room temp, the reaction was concentrated and purified by column chromatography (silica gel 60, 0-50% acetone/CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>) to yield 830 mg (72%) of the title compound as a white foam.

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 8.14 (dd, 1H), 7.37 (d, 1H), 7.28 (m, 1H), 7.1-7.0 (m, 1H), 6.87 (m, 2H), 3.95, 3.81 (rotamer singlets, 2H), 3.53 (m, 1H), 3.36 (m, 2H), 3.22 (m, 1H), 3.01 (m, 1H), 2.90 (m, 1H), 2.82 (m, 1H), 2.74, 2.63 (rotamer singlets, 3H), 2.39, 2.20 (rotamer singlets, 3H), 1.89 (m, 4H), 1.65 (m, 4H) ppm.

The corresponding 1-acetyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine) compounds were obtained by selectively removing the methanesulfonyl group with Red-Al and then treating with acetic anhydride/pyridine at the stage where the methylamino group is protected with BOC; a representative procedure is given in Example 72 above. The BOC group could be removed using the procedure given in Example 3, step A to give intermediate methylamino compounds which were benzoylated according to Example 3, step B to give the compounds in Examples 73-90:

30

### EXAMPLE 73

1-Acetyl-5-chloro-1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(methylamino)butyl)-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine)

- 124 -

10  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, 400 MHz) δ 7.83 (d, 1H, J=6.6 Hz), 7.12 (d, 1H, J=5.2 Hz), 7.09 (d, 1H, J=2.0 Hz), 6.87 (dd, 2H, J=2.0, 10.0 Hz), 6.84 (s, 1H), 2.81 (p, 1H), 2.75-2.55 (m, 4H), 2.27 (s, 3H), 2.12 (m, 1H), 5 2.04 (m, 1H), 1.95 (s, 3H), 1.9-1.7 (m, 3H), 1.6 (t, 2H), 1.5-1.4 (m, 3H) ppm.

EXAMPLE 74

15 1-Acetyl-1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(methylamino)butyl)-5-methyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine)

10  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, 400 MHz) δ 8.05 (d, 1H), 7.38 (d, 1H), 7.30 (d, 1H), 7.05 (dd, 1H), 7.00 (d, 1H), 6.92 (s, 1H), 3.79 (s, 2H), 3.01 (p, 2H), 2.9 (m, 3H), 2.52 (s, 3H), 2.5-2.1 (m, 2H), 2.29 (s, 3H), 2.20 (s, 3H), 2.1-1.7 (m, 6H), 1.65 (m, 2H) ppm.

20 EXAMPLE 75

1-Acetyl-1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(methylamino)butyl)-5-fluoro-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine)

25 10  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, 400 MHz) δ 8.14 (dd, 1H), 7.38 (d, 1H), 7.24 (s, 1H), 7.05 (dd, 1H), 6.88 (dt, 1H), 6.82 (dd, 1H), 3.96, 3.83 (rotamer singlets, 2H), 3.13 (p, 1H), 3.04 (dd, 2H), 2.92 (dd, 2H), 2.69, 2.66 (rotamer singlets, 3H), 2.50 (p, 1H), 2.33 (p, 1H), 2.38, 2.20 (rotamer singlets, 3H), 2.13 (t, 1H), 2.05 (m, 1H), 1.7 (m, 4H), 1.73 (dd, 2H) 30 ppm.

EXAMPLE 76

- 125 -

1-Acetyl-1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(methylamino)butyl)-6-fluoro-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine)

10       $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>, 500 MHz)  $\delta$  7.76 (dd, 1H), 7.58-7.53 (m, 2H),  
5      7.26 (dd, 1H), 7.21 (dd, 1H), 6.80 (dt, 1H), 3.93 (s, 2H), 2.98-2.86 (m, 3H), 2.82 (d, 1H), 2.65 (d, 1H), 2.38 (s, 3H), 2.19 (m, 1H), 2.16 (s, 3H), 2.09 (m, 1H), 2.05 (t, 1H), 1.90 (t, 2H), 1.78-1.6 (m, 3H), 1.6-1.5 (m, 2H) ppm.

15

EXAMPLE 77

1-Acetyl-1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(methylamino)butyl)-4-fluoro-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine)

15

10       $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>, 500 MHz)  $\delta$  7.88 (d, 1H), 7.63-7.58 (m, 2H), 7.29 (dd, 1H), 7.19 (q, 1H), 6.79 (t, 1H), 3.86 (s, 2H), 3.23-3.13 (m, 3H), 2.97 (m, 1H), 2.72 (m, 1H), 2.52 (s, 3H), 2.26 (m, 1H), 2.16 (s, 3H), 2.09 (t, 4H), 1.97 (p, 2H), 1.76-1.62 (m, 3H) ppm.

20

EXAMPLE 78

25

1-Acetyl-1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(benzoyl)-methylamino)butyl)-4-fluoro-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine)

Mass spectrum (Cl): m/z = 588.2 ( $^{35}\text{Cl} + ^{35}\text{Cl}$  isotope + H<sup>+</sup>).

30

EXAMPLE 79

- 126 -

1-Acetyl-1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3,5,-dimethylbenzoyl)-(methylamino))butyl)-6-fluoro-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine)

5 Mass spectrum (CI): m/z = 610.2 ( $^{35}\text{Cl} + ^{35}\text{Cl}$  isotope + H $^+$ ), 612.2 ( $^{37}\text{Cl} + ^{35}\text{Cl}$  isotope + H $^+$ ).

EXAMPLE 80

10

1-Acetyl-1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(benzoyl)-(methylamino))butyl)-6-fluoro-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine)

15

Mass spectrum (CI): m/z = 582.3 ( $^{35}\text{Cl} + ^{35}\text{Cl}$  isotope + H $^+$ ).

EXAMPLE 81

20

1-Acetyl-1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3,5,-dimethylbenzoyl)-(methylamino))butyl)-4-fluoro-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine)

Mass spectrum (CI): m/z = 610.3 ( $^{35}\text{Cl} + ^{35}\text{Cl}$  isotope + H $^+$ )

25

EXAMPLE 82

30

1-Acetyl-1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(benzoyl)-(methylamino))butyl)-5-fluoro-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine)

Mass spectrum (CI): m/z = 582.2 ( $^{35}\text{Cl} + ^{35}\text{Cl}$  isotope + H $^+$ ).

- 127 -

EXAMPLE 83

1-Acetyl-1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3,5-dimethylbenzoyl)-(methylamino))butyl)-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine)

5 Mass spectrum (FAB): m/z = 626.0 ( $^{35}\text{Cl} + ^{35}\text{Cl}$  isotope + H $^+$ ), 628.1 ( $^{37}\text{Cl} + ^{35}\text{Cl}$  isotope + H $^+$ ).

10

EXAMPLE 84

15 1-Acetyl-1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3-chlorobenzoyl)-(methylamino))butyl)-5-fluoro-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine)

Mass spectrum (CI): m/z = 616.2 ( $^{35}\text{Cl} + ^{35}\text{Cl}$  isotope + H $^+$ ).

20

EXAMPLE 85

25 1-Acetyl-1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3,5-dichlorobenzoyl)-(methylamino))butyl)-5-fluoro-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine)

Mass spectrum (CI): m/z = 650.1 ( $^{35}\text{Cl} + ^{35}\text{Cl}$  isotope + H $^+$ ).

30

EXAMPLE 86

1-Acetyl-1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3-methylbenzoyl)-(methylamino))butyl)-5-fluoro-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine)

- 128 -

Mass spectrum (CI):  $m/z = 596.2$  ( $^{35}\text{Cl} + ^{35}\text{Cl}$  isotope +  $\text{H}^+$ ),  $598.3$  ( $^{37}\text{Cl} + ^{35}\text{Cl}$  isotope +  $\text{H}^+$ ).

5

EXAMPLE 87

1-Acetyl-1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3,5-dimethylbenzoyl)-(methylamino))butyl)-5-fluoro-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine)

10

Mass spectrum (CI):  $m/z = 610.2$  ( $^{35}\text{Cl} + ^{35}\text{Cl}$  isotope +  $\text{H}^+$ ).

15

EXAMPLE 88

1-Acetyl-1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3-isopropoxybenzoyl)-(methylamino))butyl)-5-fluoro-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine)

20

Mass spectrum (CI):  $m/z = 640.3$  ( $^{35}\text{Cl} + ^{35}\text{Cl}$  isotope +  $\text{H}^+$ ),  $642.3$  ( $^{37}\text{Cl} + ^{35}\text{Cl}$  isotope +  $\text{H}^+$ ).

25

EXAMPLE 89

1-Acetyl-1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3,5-bis(trifluoromethyl)-(methylamino))butyl)-5-fluoro-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine)

30

Mass spectrum (CI):  $m/z = 718.2$  ( $^{35}\text{Cl} + ^{35}\text{Cl}$  isotope +  $\text{H}^+$ ),  $720.2$  ( $^{37}\text{Cl} + ^{35}\text{Cl}$  isotope +  $\text{H}^+$ ).

- 129 -

EXAMPLE 90

5 1-Acetyl-1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3,5-dimethylbenzoyl)-  
(methylamino))butyl)-5-methyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine)

Mass spectrum (FAB): m/z = 606.1 ( $^{35}\text{Cl} + ^{35}\text{Cl}$  isotope + H $^+$ ), 608.2  
( $^{37}\text{Cl} + ^{35}\text{Cl}$  isotope + H $^+$ ).

10

15 N-Napthoyl- methylamino derivatives (Examples 91-101) were prepared by analogy to the benzoyl derivatives, employing commercially available 1-napthoyl chlorides in place of benzoyl chlorides:

EXAMPLE 91

20

1-Acetyl-1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(4-fluoro-1-napthoyl)-  
(methylamino))butyl)-5-fluoro-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine)

25

Mass spectrum (CI): m/z = 650.3 ( $^{35}\text{Cl} + ^{35}\text{Cl}$  isotope + H $^+$ ).

EXAMPLE 92

30

1-Acetyl-1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(1-napthoyl)-  
(methylamino))butyl)-5-fluoro-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine)

Mass spectrum (CI): m/z = 632.2 ( $^{35}\text{Cl} + ^{35}\text{Cl}$  isotope + H $^+$ ), 634.2  
( $^{37}\text{Cl} + ^{35}\text{Cl}$  isotope + H $^+$ ).

- 130 -

EXAMPLE 93

5

1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-Dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(1-naphthoyl)-(methylamino))butyl)-5-fluoro-1-methanesulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine)

10 Mass spectrum (CI): m/z = 668.2 ( $^{35}\text{Cl} + ^{35}\text{Cl}$  isotope + H $^+$ ).

EXAMPLE 94

15

1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-Dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(4-fluoro-1-naphthoyl)-(methylamino))butyl)-5-fluoro-1-methanesulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine)

20 Mass spectrum (CI): m/z = 668.2 ( $^{35}\text{Cl} + ^{35}\text{Cl}$  isotope + H $^+$ ).

EXAMPLE 95

25

1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-Dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(4-fluoro-1-naphthoyl)-(methylamino))butyl)-spiro(2,3-dihydrobenzothiophene-3,4'-piperidine)

30 Mass spectrum (CI): m/z = 607.2 ( $^{35}\text{Cl} + ^{35}\text{Cl}$  isotope + H $^+$ ).

EXAMPLE 96

- 131 -

1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-Dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(4-fluoro-1-naphthoyl)-(methylamino))butyl)-spiro(2,3-dihydrobenzothiophene-3,4'-piperidine)sulfone

5 Mass spectrum (CI): m/z = 639.1 ( $^{35}\text{Cl} + ^{35}\text{Cl}$  isotope +  $\text{H}^+$ ).

EXAMPLE 97

10

1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-Dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(4-fluoro-1-naphthoyl)-(methylamino))butyl)-spiro(2,3-dihydrobenzothiophene-3,4'-piperidine)

15 Mass spectrum (CI): m/z = 623.1 ( $^{35}\text{Cl} + ^{35}\text{Cl}$  isotope +  $\text{H}^+$ ).

EXAMPLE 98

20

1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-Dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(4-fluoro-1-naphthoyl)-(methylamino))butyl)-5-fluoro-spiro(2,3-dihydrobenzofuran-3,4'-piperidine)

25 Mass spectrum (CI): m/z = 609.3 ( $^{35}\text{Cl} + ^{35}\text{Cl}$  isotope +  $\text{H}^+$ ), 611.3 ( $^{37}\text{Cl} + ^{35}\text{Cl}$  isotope +  $\text{H}^+$ ).

EXAMPLE 99

30

1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-Dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(4-fluoro-1-naphthoyl)-(methylamino))butyl)-spiro(2,3-dihydrobenzofuran-3,4'-piperidine)

- 132 -

Mass spectrum (CI):  $m/z = 591.3$  ( $^{35}\text{Cl} + ^{35}\text{Cl}$  isotope +  $\text{H}^+$ ),  $593.3$  ( $^{37}\text{Cl} + ^{35}\text{Cl}$  isotope +  $\text{H}^+$ ).

5

EXAMPLE 100

1-Acetyl-1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(4-fluoro-1-naphthoyl)-(methylamino))butyl)-6-fluoro-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine)

10

Mass spectrum (CI):  $m/z = 650.3$  ( $^{35}\text{Cl} + ^{35}\text{Cl}$  isotope +  $\text{H}^+$ ).

EXAMPLE 101

15

1-Acetyl-1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(4-fluoro-1-naphthoyl)-(methylamino))butyl)-4-fluoro-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine)

20

Mass spectrum (CI):  $m/z = 650.3$  ( $^{35}\text{Cl} + ^{35}\text{Cl}$  isotope +  $\text{H}^+$ ).

30

Benzylamine derivatives could be synthesized by reducing the benzamide of the 1-methanesulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine) derivatives described in some of the Examples. The methanesulfonyl group could be removed by heating with HBr/acetic acid/phenol and then be replaced with an acetyl group by treating with acetic anhydride/pyridine. Representative procedures and compounds are given in Examples 102 and 103 below:

EXAMPLE 102

- 133 -

1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-Dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(4-fluoro-1-naphthylmethyl)-(methylamino))butyl)-5-fluoro-1-methanesulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine)

5 1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-Dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(4-fluoro-1-naphthoyl)-(methylamino))butyl)-5-fluoro-1-methanesulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine) (96 mg) was dissolved in 1M Dibal-H in toluene (160  $\mu$ L). After 1/2 h, saturated aqueous sodium potassium tartrate (5 mL) and EtOAc (5 mL) were added and stirred vigorously for 2 h. The organic 10 layer was washed with H<sub>2</sub>O (5 mL), brine (5 mL), dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>), and concentrated to a crude oil, which was purified by column chromatography (silica gel 60, 0-10% acetone/CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>) to yield 55 mg (59%) of the title compound as a white foam; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>)  $\delta$  8.09 (d, 1H, J=8.5 Hz), 7.91 (d, 1H, J=8.5 Hz), 7.53 (t, 1H, J=7.5 Hz), 7.38 (t, 1H, J=7.5 Hz), 7.33 (dd, 1H, J=4.3, 8.8 Hz), 7.22 (dd, 1H, J=5.8, 7.8 Hz), 7.18 (d, 1H, J=8.5 Hz), 7.09 (d, J=2.0 Hz), 7.04 (dd, 1H, J=7.5, 10.0 Hz), 6.92 (dt, 1H, J=2.5, 8.5 Hz), 6.88 (d, 1H), 6.77 (dd, 1H, J=1.8, 8.3 Hz), 3.85 (dd, 1H, J=8.0 Hz), 3.76 (s, 2H), 3.75 (dd, 1H, J=8.0 Hz), 2.88 (s, 3H), 2.80-2.66 (m, 3H), 2.62 (dd, 1H, J=8.8, 12.3 Hz), 2.51 (dd, 1H, J=6.5, 12.5 Hz), 2.28 (s, 3H), 2.18-2.06 (m, 2H), 1.88-1.80 (m, 4H), 1.65 (d, 2H, J=10.5 Hz) ppm;

Mass spectrum (CI): m/z = 672.4 (<sup>35</sup>Cl + <sup>35</sup>Cl isotope + H<sup>+</sup>).

25

### EXAMPLE 103

30 1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-Dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(4-fluoro-1-naphthylmethyl)-(methylamino))butyl)-5-fluoro-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine)

1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(4-fluoro-1-naphthylmethyl)-(methylamino))butyl)-5-fluoro-1-methanesulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine) (45.6 mg) and phenol (19 mg) in 30% HBr/HOAc (270  $\mu$ L)

- 134 -

were heated to 70°C for 6 h in a sealed vessel. The reaction was concentrated and partitioned between CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> (1 ml) and 1N NaOH (2 mL). The organic layer was eluted through a 3x3 cm silica gel plug with 0-100% acetone/CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> to yield 30 mg (74%) of the title 5 compound as a yellow oil.

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 8.09 (d, 1H, J=8.0 Hz), 7.93 (d, 1H, J=8.5 Hz), 7.52 (t, 1H, J=7.5 Hz), 7.43 (t, 1H, J=7.3 Hz), 7.22 (dd, 1H, J=5.5, 7.5 Hz), 7.17 (d, 1H, J=8.5 Hz), 7.06 (dd, 1H, J=8.8, 10.3 Hz), 10 7.02 (d, 1H, J=1.5 Hz), 6.87 (d, 1H, J=3.5 Hz) 6.78 (dd, 1H, J=2.3, 8.3 Hz), 6.75 (dd, 1H, J=2.3, 7.8 Hz), 6.56 (dd, 1H, J=4.0, 8.5 Hz) ppm;

Mass spectrum (CI): m/z = 594.3 (35Cl + 35Cl isotope + H<sup>+</sup>), 596.3 (37Cl + 35Cl isotope + H<sup>+</sup>). 15

#### EXAMPLE 104

20 1-Acetyl-1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(4-fluoro-1-naphthylmethyl)-(methylamino))butyl)-5-fluoro-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine)

25 1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-Dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(4-fluoro-1-naphthylmethyl)-(methylamino))butyl)-5-fluoro-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine) (10 mg) in CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> (100 μL) was treated with one drop acetic anhydride and 1 drop pyridine. After 30 min, the reaction was eluted through a 1x2 cm silica gel column using 0-100% acetone/CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> plus 1% NH<sub>4</sub>OH to 30 yield 10 mg (93%) of the title compound as a clear film.

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 8.17 (dd, 1H, J=4.3, 8.8 Hz), 8.09 (d, 1H, J=8.5 Hz), 7.91 (d, 1H, J=8.0 Hz), 7.52 (t, 1H, 7.3 Hz), 7.38 (t, 1H, J=7.3 Hz), 7.22 (dd 1H, 6.8, 7.0 Hz), 7.18 (d, 1H, J=8.8 Hz), 7.07 (d, 1H, J=2.0 Hz), 7.04 (dd, 1H, J=8.0, 10.5 Hz), 6.91 (dt, 1H, J=2.0, 9.0 Hz), 6.86

- 135 -

(dd, 1H,  $J=2.0, 7.5$  Hz), 6.76 (dd, 1H,  $J=2.0, 8.5$  Hz), 3.96, 3.81 (rotamer singlets, 3H), 3.85 (d, 1H,  $J=13$  Hz), 3.75 (d, 1H,  $J=13$  Hz), 2.84 (m, 2H), 2.74 (m, 1H), 2.61 (dd, 1H,  $J=8.5, 13$  Hz), 2.51 (dd, 1H,  $J=7.0, 13$  Hz), 2.43, 2.35 (rotamer singlets, 3H), 2.24 (s, 3H), 2.3-2.2 (m, 3H), 2.0-1.85 (m, 4H), 1.65 (m, 2H), 1.50 (m, 1H) ppm;

5 Mass spectrum (CI):  $m/z = 636.4$  ( $^{35}\text{Cl} + ^{35}\text{Cl}$  isotope +  $\text{H}^+$ ), 638.4 ( $^{37}\text{Cl} + ^{35}\text{Cl}$  isotope +  $\text{H}^+$ ).

10

#### EXAMPLE 105

15 1'-(5-Fluoroindolyl-3-(2-ethanoyl))-1-methanesulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine).

To a solution of 1-methanesulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine) hydrochloride (373 mg, 1.23 mmol), 5-fluoroindole-3-acetic acid (500 mg, 2.59 mmol), in DMF (15 mL) at room temp. was added N-methyl 20 morpholine (261 mg, 2.59 mmol), hydroxybenzotriazole (381 mg, 2.82 mmol) and 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide (473 mg, 2.47 mmol). The reaction was stirred 48 h, diluted with  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  (250 mL), extracted with EtOAc (3 x 100 mL), washed with  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  (2 x 150 mL), brine (150 mL), dried ( $\text{Na}_2\text{SO}_4$ ), concentrated in vacuo and 25 purified by column chromatography (SG 60 silica, 5% MeOH/CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>) to afford 486 mg (89%) of the title compound as a colorless oil.

30  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (500 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>)  $\delta$  8.39 (br s, 1H), 7.37 (d, 1H,  $J = 8.2$  Hz), 7.34 (dd, 1H,  $J = 9.6, 2.3$  Hz), 7.29 (dd, 1H,  $J = 8.9, 4.4$  Hz), 7.23 (dt, 1H,  $J = 7.8, 1.2$  Hz), 7.14 (d, 1H,  $J = 2.3$  Hz), 7.03 (t, 1H,  $J = 7.3$  Hz), 6.98 (dt, 1H,  $J = 8.9, 2.5$  Hz), 6.87 (d, 1H,  $J = 7.5$  Hz), 4.73 (d, 1H,  $J = 13.7$  Hz), 3.96 (d, 1H,  $J = 14.0$  Hz), 3.82-3.92 (m, 2H), 3.72-3.78 (m, 1H), 3.13 (t, 1H,  $J = 13.4$  Hz), 2.91 (s, 3H), 2.73 (t, 1H,  $J = 13.5$  Hz),

- 136 -

1.83 (dt, 1H,  $J$  = 13.5, 4.4 Hz), 1.65-1.75 (m, 2H), 1.52-1.58 (m, 1H), 1.40 (dt, 1H,  $J$  = 13.0, 4.3 Hz) ppm; Mass spec (CI) m/z 441 (M+H).

5

EXAMPLE 106

1'-(2-(3-(5-Fluoroindolyl)ethyl))-1-methanesulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine).

10

To a solution of 1'-(5-fluoroindolyl-3-(2-ethanoyl))-1-methanesulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine) (100 mg, .226 mmol) in CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> (8 mL) at -70°C was added Dibal-H (1M in THF, 0.91 mL, .906 mmol). After 2.5 h the mixture was quenched by addition of 1M NaOH (20 mL), diluted with CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> and stirred vigorously for 15 min. The mixture was extracted with CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> (3 x 50 mL), washed with brine (50 mL), dried (Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>), concentrated in vacuo and purified by column chromatography (SG60 silica, 5% MeOH/CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>) to afford 66 mg (68%) of the title compound as a colorless solid.

20

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (500 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>)  $\delta$  8.20 (br s, 1H), 7.42 (d, 1H,  $J$  = 8.0 Hz), 7.20-7.30 (m, 4H), 7.06-7.14 (m, 2H), 6.93-6.97 (m, 1H), 3.84 (s, 2H), 3.08 (d, 2H,  $J$  = 11.7 Hz), 2.94-3.00 (m, 2H), 2.93 (s, 3H), 2.71-2.77 (m, 2H), 2.19 (t, 2H,  $J$  = 12.3 Hz), 2.07 (dt, 2H,  $J$  = 13.2, 3.9 Hz), 1.75 (d, 2H,  $J$  = 13.0 Hz) ppm; Mass spec (CI) m/z 428 (M+H).

25

EXAMPLE 107

30 4-Fluoro-3,5-dimethylbenzoic acid

Step 1) 1-Bromo-4-fluoro-3,5-dimethylbenzene

- 137 -

To a mixture of 4-Bromo-2,6-dimethylaniline (8.3 g, 42 mmol) at 5°C and H<sub>2</sub>O (50 mL) was added conc H<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub> (6.25 mL). NaNO<sub>2</sub> (4.1 g) was added in portions until an excess was indicated by starch iodide paper. Water (30 mL) was added to make the mixture homogeneous.

5 After transferring to a plastic container, HBF<sub>4</sub> (50%, 13.7 g) was added dropwise with stirring. The resultant white precipitate was collected by vacuum filtration, washed with H<sub>2</sub>O (30 mL), MeOH (30 mL), and Et<sub>2</sub>O (60 mL), and dried over P<sub>2</sub>O<sub>5</sub> under vacuum for 16 h. The solid was then heated in a glass flask with an open flame until all the solid had 10 decomposed. The remaining liquid was diluted with Et<sub>2</sub>O (50 mL) and 0.5 M NaOH (30 mL). The organic layer was separated, washed with 0.5 M NaOH (25 mL), H<sub>2</sub>O (25 mL), brine (25 mL), dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>), and concentrated in vacuo yielding 6.06 g (72%) of 1-bromo-4-fluoro-3,5-dimethylbenzene as a pale yellow liquid.

15 <sup>1</sup>H NMR (500 MHZ, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 7.17 (d, 2H, J = 6.2 Hz), 2.21 (s, 6H) ppm.

20 Step B) 4-Fluoro-3,5-dimethylbenzoic acid

To a mixture of magnesium shavings (120 mg, 4.92 mmol) in THF (2 mL) was added a crystal of iodine followed by slow addition of a solution of the bromide (1.0 g, 4.92 mmol) in THF (3 mL). The 25 reaction mixture was heated to reflux for 1 h followed by cooling to room temp. and addition of CO<sub>2</sub>(s) (excess), stirred 1 h and quenched by addition of 1M HCl (10 mL). The mixture was extracted with Et<sub>2</sub>O (3 x 25 mL), washed with brine (25 mL), dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>), and 30 concentrated in vacuo to afford 0.82 g (99%) of the title compound as a pale yellow solid.

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (500 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 7.81 (d, 2H, J = 6.7 Hz), 2.36 (s, 6H) ppm;

- 138 -

Mass spec (CI) m/z 168 (M-H).

5 The compounds of Examples 108-120 were prepared as per Example 3  
Step B utilizing the previously prepared amines and the appropriate  
benzoic or naphthoic acids:

EXAMPLE 108

10

1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-Dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3-chloro-4-fluorobenzoyl)-  
(methylamino))butyl)-1-methanesulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine)

15 Mass spec (CI) 656 ( $^{37}\text{Cl} + ^{35}\text{Cl}$  isotope +  $\text{H}^+$ ), 654 ( $^{35}\text{Cl} + ^{35}\text{Cl}$  isotope +  $\text{H}^+$ ).

EXAMPLE 109

20

1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-Dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3-chloro-4-fluorobenzoyl)-  
(methylamino))butyl)-5-fluoro-1-methanesulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-  
piperidine)

25

Mass spec (CI) 674 ( $^{37}\text{Cl} + ^{35}\text{Cl}$  isotope +  $\text{H}^+$ ), 672 ( $^{35}\text{Cl} + ^{35}\text{Cl}$  isotope +  $\text{H}^+$ ).

30

EXAMPLE 110

1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-Dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(4-fluorobenzoyl)-  
(methylamino))butyl)-1-methanesulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine)

- 139 -

Mass spec (CI) 620 ( $^{37}\text{Cl} + ^{35}\text{Cl}$  isotope +  $\text{H}^+$ ), 618 ( $^{35}\text{Cl} + ^{35}\text{Cl}$  isotope +  $\text{H}^+$ ).

5

EXAMPLE 111

10

1'-((S)-(3,4-Dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(4-fluorobenzoyl)-  
(methylamino)butyl)-5-fluoro-1-acetyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine)

Mass spec (CI) 618 ( $^{37}\text{Cl} + ^{35}\text{Cl}$  isotope +  $\text{H}^+$ ), 616 ( $^{35}\text{Cl} + ^{35}\text{Cl}$  isotope +  $\text{H}^+$ ).

15

EXAMPLE 112

20

1'-((S)-(3,4-Dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3-chloro-4-fluorobenzoyl)-  
(methylamino)butyl)-5-fluoro-1-acetyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine)

Mass spec (CI) 636 ( $^{37}\text{Cl} + ^{35}\text{Cl}$  isotope +  $\text{H}^+$ ), 634 ( $^{35}\text{Cl} + ^{35}\text{Cl}$  isotope +  $\text{H}^+$ ).

25

EXAMPLE 113

30

1'-((S)-(3,4-Dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(4-fluoro-3,5-dimethylbenzoyl)-  
(methylamino)butyl)-5-fluoro-1-acetyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine)

Mass spec (CI) 630 ( $^{37}\text{Cl} + ^{35}\text{Cl}$  isotope +  $\text{H}^+$ ), 628 ( $^{35}\text{Cl} + ^{35}\text{Cl}$  isotope +  $\text{H}^+$ ).

- 140 -

EXAMPLE 114

5 1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-Dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(4-fluoro-3,5-dimethylbenzoyl)-(methylamino))butyl)-1-methanesulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine)

10 Mass spec (CI) 648 ( $^{37}\text{Cl} + 35\text{Cl}$  isotope +  $\text{H}^+$ ), 646 ( $^{35}\text{Cl} + 35\text{Cl}$  isotope +  $\text{H}^+$ ).

10

EXAMPLE 115

15 1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-Dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(4-fluoro-3-trifluoromethylbenzoyl)-(methylamino))butyl)-1-methanesulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine)

20 Mass spec (CI) 688 ( $^{37}\text{Cl} + 35\text{Cl}$  isotope +  $\text{H}^+$ ), 686 ( $^{35}\text{Cl} + 35\text{Cl}$  isotope +  $\text{H}^+$ ).

20

EXAMPLE 116

25 1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-Dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(4-fluoro-3,5-dimethylbenzoyl)-(methylamino))butyl)-1-acetyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine)

30 Mass spec (CI) 612 ( $^{37}\text{Cl} + 35\text{Cl}$  isotope +  $\text{H}^+$ ), 610 ( $^{35}\text{Cl} + 35\text{Cl}$  isotope +  $\text{H}^+$ ).

30

EXAMPLE 117

- 141 -

1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-Dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(4-fluoro-3-trifluoromethylbenzoyl)-(methylamino))butyl)-1-acetyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine)

5 Mass spec (CI) 652 ( $^{37}\text{Cl} + ^{35}\text{Cl}$  isotope +  $\text{H}^+$ ), 650 ( $^{35}\text{Cl} + ^{35}\text{Cl}$  isotope +  $\text{H}^+$ ).

EXAMPLE 118

10

1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-Dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(4-fluoro-1-naphthoyl)-(methylamino))butyl)-1-acetyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine)

15 Mass spec (CI) 634 ( $^{37}\text{Cl} + ^{35}\text{Cl}$  isotope +  $\text{H}^+$ ), 632 ( $^{35}\text{Cl} + ^{35}\text{Cl}$  isotope +  $\text{H}^+$ ).

EXAMPLE 119

20

1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-Dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(4-fluoro-1-naphthoyl)-(methylamino))butyl)-1-methanesulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine)

25 Mass spec (CI) 670 ( $^{37}\text{Cl} + ^{35}\text{Cl}$  isotope +  $\text{H}^+$ ), 668 ( $^{35}\text{Cl} + ^{35}\text{Cl}$  isotope +  $\text{H}^+$ ).

EXAMPLE 120

30 1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-Dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(1-naphthoyl)-(methylamino))butyl)-1-acetyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine)

Mass spec (CI) 616 ( $^{37}\text{Cl} + ^{35}\text{Cl}$  isotope +  $\text{H}^+$ ), 614 ( $^{35}\text{Cl} + ^{35}\text{Cl}$  isotope +  $\text{H}^+$ ).

- 142 -

### EXAMPLE 121

5 1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-Dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3,5-dimethylbenzoyl)-  
(methylamino))-4-phenyl-butyl)-1-methanesulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-  
piperidine)

10 The title compound was prepared in 6 steps from 2-(S)-  
(3,4-dichlorophenyl)-4-pentenoic acid using procedures identical to  
those in Example 10, substituting phenyllithium for methyllithium in  
Example 10, Step 2.

15 Mass Spectrum (FAB): m/z 704 (M+H,  $^{37}\text{Cl} + 35\text{Cl}$  isotope, 100%),  
706 (M+H,  $^{37}\text{Cl} + 37\text{Cl}$  isotope, 80%).

### EXAMPLE 122

20 1'-(4-(N-(3,5-Dimethylbenzoyl)-(methylamino))-4-(phenyl)butyl)-1-  
acetyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine)

25 The title compound was prepared in 6 steps from 4-  
pentenoic acid using procedures identical to those in Example 10,  
substituting phenyllithium for methyllithium in Example 10, Step 2.

Mass Spectrum (FAB): m/z 524 (M+H,  $^{37}\text{Cl} + 35\text{Cl}$  isotope, 100%),  
526 (M+H,  $^{37}\text{Cl} + 37\text{Cl}$  isotope, 50%).

30

### EXAMPLE 123

1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-Dichlorophenyl))-4-(1-(2-phenylimidazolo))butyl)-1-  
methanesulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine)

- 143 -

Step 1) 1-(2-Phenylimidazolo)-2-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-pentene

To a solution of 0.178 g (0.77 mmole) of 2-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-penten-1-ol (prepared in Example 136, Step A) and 0.099 mL (0.85 mmole) of 2,6-lutidine in 1.5 mL of methylene chloride at -53 deg C under nitrogen was added 0.136 mL (0.81 mmole) of trifluoromethanesulfonic anhydride. The solution was stirred between -30 deg C and -40 deg C for 15 min at which point 0.333 g (2.31 mmole) of 2-phenylimidazole was added. The temperature was allowed to warm to -20 deg C briefly, and the mixture was then cooled to -60 deg C, stirred at that temperature for 1 hr, stirred at -20 deg C for 2 hr, and then held at 4 deg C for 16 hr. After stirring at room temperature for 8 hr, the mixture was treated with 10 mL of saturated sodium carbonate solution and 10 mL of ethyl acetate and the layers were separated. The aqueous phase was extracted with 2x15 mL of ethyl acetate and the combined aqueous layers were dried over sodium sulfate, filtered and concentrated in vacuo. The residue was partly purified by flash chromatography on 36 g of silica eluting with 500 mL of 3:100 methanol:methylene chloride then 300 mL of 5:100:0.1 methanol:methylene chloride: ammonia water. The partly purified product fractions were flash chromatographed on 66 g of silica eluting with 1.2 L of 83:17 methylene chloride:ethyl acetate to give 85 mg (31%) of an oil.

<sup>25</sup>  $^1\text{H-NMR}$  (400 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  2.26 (app. t, 2H), 2.85 (pentet, 1H), 4.08 (dd, 1H), 4.27 (dd, 1H), 4.9-5.0 (m, 2H), 5.45-5.55 (m, 1H), 6.59 (dd, 1H), 6.79 (s, 1H), 6.85 (d, 1H), 7.18 (d, 1H), 7.23-7.30 (m, 2H), 7.35-7.4 (m, 3H).

<sup>30</sup> Mass Spectrum (FAB): m/z 359 (M+H, 65%), 357 (M+H, 100%), 145 (7%).

- 144 -

Step 2) 1'-(2-((S)-(3,4-Dichlorophenyl))-1-(1-(2-phenylimidazolo))-4-butyl)-1-methanesulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine)

5 The title compound was prepared by employing the chemistry outlined in Examples 1 and 2, using 1-(2-phenylimidazolo)-2-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-3-butene in place of 3-(S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl)-4-methylamino-1-pentene, and beginning with the osmium tetroxide step.

10  $^1\text{H-NMR}$  (400 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  1.55-2 (m, 8H), 2.08 (t,  $J$  = 7.3, 2H), 2.63 (br d,  $J$  = 11, 1H), 2.70 (br d,  $J$  = 8.3, 1H), 2.86 (s, 3H), 2.9-3.0 (m, 1H), 3.71 (s, 2H), 4.13 (dd,  $J$  = 14, 8.8, 1H), 4.25 (dd,  $J$  = 14, 6.2, 1H), 6.66 (dd,  $J$  = 6.2, 2.1, 1H), 6.79 (d,  $J$  = 1.3, 1H), 6.94 (d,  $J$  = 2.1, 1H), 7.03 (d,  $J$  = 1.3, 1H), 7.05 (d,  $J$  = 6.4, 1H), 7.15 (d,  $J$  = 6.5, 1H), 7.15-7.25 (m, 2H), 7.35-7.45 (m, 6H)

15

Mass Spectrum (FAB): m/z 609 ( $\text{M}+\text{H}$ , 25%), 279 (100%), 267 (50%), 212 (30%), 187 (35%).

20

#### EXAMPLE 124

1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-Dichlorophenyl))-4-((N-(R or S)-(3,5-dimethylbenzoyl)-(methylamino))pentyl)-1-acetyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine)

25

The title compound was prepared in 6 steps from (2S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl)-4-pentenoic acid using procedures identical to those in Example 10, substituting 1-acetyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine) for 1-methanesulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine) in Example 10, Step 6.

30

Mass Spectrum (FAB): m/z 606 ( $\text{M}+\text{H}$ ,  $^{37}\text{Cl} + ^{35}\text{Cl}$  isotope, 100%), 608 ( $\text{M}+\text{H}$ ,  $^{37}\text{Cl} + ^{37}\text{Cl}$  isotope, 80%).

- 145 -

**EXAMPLE 125**

1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-Dichlorophenyl))-4-((N-(R or S)-(4-fluoro-1-naphthyl)-(methylamino))pentyl)-1-acetyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine)

5

The title compound was prepared in 6 steps from (2S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl)-4-pentenoic acid using procedures identical to those in Example 10, substituting 1-acetyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine) for 1-methanesulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine) in Example 10, Step 6, 10 and substituting 4-fluoro-1-naphthoyl chloride for benzoyl chloride.

Mass Spectrum (FAB): m/z 646 (M+H,  $^{37}\text{Cl} + ^{35}\text{Cl}$  isotope, 30%), 204 (100%).

15

The following compounds described in Examples 126-129 were prepared by the method described in Scheme II and in Example 10, except that in step 2 ethylmagnesium chloride or propylmagnesium chloride was used at room temperature instead 20 of methylolithium at -78°C.

**EXAMPLE 126**

25 1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-Dichlorophenyl))-4-(R or S)-(N-(3,5-dimethylbenzoyl)-(methylamino))hexyl)-1-acetyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine)

30  $^1\text{H-NMR}$  (400 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  0.97 (t, 3H), 2.20 (s, 6H), 2.21 (s, 3H), 2.42-2.46 (s+m, 4H), 6.23 (s, 2H), 6.89 (s, 1H), 7.04 (t, 1H), 7.15-7.21 (m, 3H), 7.39 (t, 2H), 8.18 (d, 1H).

Mass Spectrum (FAB) m/z 620 (m $^+$ ).

- 146 -

EXAMPLE 127

5 1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-Dichlorophenyl))-4-(R or S)-(N-(3,5-dimethylbenzoyl)-(methylamino))hexyl)-1-acetyl-5-fluoro-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine)

10  $^1\text{H-NMR}$  (400 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  0.96 (t, 3H), 2.20 (s, 9H), 2.45 (s, 3H), 3.81 (s, 2H), 6.24 (s, 2H), 6.84-6.89 (m, 3H), 7.19 (dd, 1H), 7.39 (t, 2H), 8.13 (dd, 1H).

15 Mass Spectrum (FAB) m/z 638 ( $\text{m}^+$ ).

EXAMPLE 128

15 1'-(3-(S)-(3,4-Dichlorophenyl)-4-(R or S)-(N-(3,5-dimethylbenzoyl)-(methylamino))heptyl)-1-acetyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine)

20  $^1\text{H-NMR}$  (400 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  0.96 (t, 3H), 2.20 (s, 6H), 2.21 (s, 3H), 2.41-2.45 (s+m, 4H), 3.78 (s, 2H), 6.22 (s, 2H), 6.89 (s, 1H), 7.03 (t, 1H), 7.15-7.21 (m, 3H), 7.39 (t, 2H), 8.18 (d, 1H).

25 Mass Spectrum (FAB): m/z 634 ( $\text{m}^+$ ).

EXAMPLE 129

30 1'-(3-(S)-(3,4-Dichlorophenyl)-4-(R or S)-(N-(3,5-dimethylbenzoyl)-(methylamino))heptyl)-1-acetyl-5-fluoro-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine)

$^1\text{H-NMR}$  (400 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  0.97 (t, 3H), 2.20 (s, 9H), 2.44 (s, 3H), 3.81 (s, 2H), 6.22 (s, 2H), 6.83-6.88 (m, 3H), 7.18 (dd, 1H), 7.38 (t, 2H), 8.13 (dd, 1H).

- 147 -

Mass Spectrum (FAB) m/z 652 (m<sup>+</sup>).

EXAMPLE 130

5

1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-Dichlorophenyl))-4-(R or S)-hydroxy-5-(3,5-dimethylphenyl)pentyl)-1-methane-sulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine)

10

To a THF (3 mL) solution of 3,5-dimethylbenzylmagnesium chloride (generated from 290 mg (1.9 mmol) of 3,5-dimethylbenzyl chloride and 53 mg (2.2 mmol) of magnesium in THF) was added slowly 1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-3-(N-methoxy-N-

15

methylaminocarbonyl)propyl)-1-methanesulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine) (100 mg, 0.19 mmol, prepared by reacting the product obtained in Example 10, Step 1 under the oxidative cleavage conditions given in Example 1 followed by the coupling procedure given in Example 2) in 1 mL of THF. The reaction

20

mixture was stirred at 60°C for 40 min and poured into 20 mL of 1N HCl. The solution was extracted with 3 x 10 mL of EtOAc. The organic extracts were combined, dried, and concentrated. The product was purified by preparative TLC (30% EtOAc in

CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>) to afford 20 mg of ketone.

25

To a MeOH (3 mL) solution of ketone (19.4 mg) was added sodium borohydride (7 mg). The mixture was stirred at 55°C for 1h and concentrated. The residue was purified by preparative TLC (4% MeOH in CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>) to give 15 mg of the higher R<sub>f</sub> isomer (Isomer A) and 4 mg of a lower R<sub>f</sub> isomer (Isomer B).

30

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) , Isomer A: d 1.71 (d, 2H), 1.92-2.12 (m, 6H), 2.23-2.29 (s+m, 9H), 2.50-2.60 (m, 2H), 2.72-2.76 (m, 1H), 2.88 (s, 3H). 2.95 (d, 2H), 3.76 (s, 2H), 4.00-4.06 (m,

- 148 -

1H), 6.69 (s, 2H), 6.83 (s, 1H), 7.05 (d, 1H), 7.19-7.24 (m, 3H), 7.37 (t, 2H), 7.44 (s, 1H).

5 Mass spectrum (FAB) Isomer A, m/z 601 (m<sup>+</sup>), 603 (m<sup>++</sup> 2).

10 <sup>1</sup>H-NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>), Isomer B: d 1.69 (d, 2H), 1.74-1.79 (m, 1H), 1.83-1.90 (m, 1H), 1.93-2.05 (m, 2H), 2.07-2.20 (m, 2H), 2.24-2.36 (s+m, 8H), 2.42-2.47 (m, 1H), 2.55-2.58 (dd, 1H), 2.66-2.72 (d+dd, 2H), 2.87 (s, 3H), 2.86-3.00 (m, 2H), 3.76 (s, 2H), 3.91-3.95 (m, 1H), 6.72 (s, 2H), 6.82 (s, 2H), 7.13-7.19 (m, 2H), 7.18-7.21 (m, 2H), 7.36 (t, 2H).

15 Mass spectrum (FAB) Isomer B, m/z 601 (m<sup>+</sup>) 603 (m<sup>++</sup> 2).

EXAMPLE 131

20 1'-(3-(R)-(3,4-Dichlorophenyl)-5-(N-3,5-dimethylphenyl-methylamino)-5-oxo-pentyl)-1-methanesulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine)

Step 1) Diazomethyl-(2-(S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl)-pent-4-en-yl)-ketone.

25 To a solution of 2-(S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl)-pent-4-enoic acid (5.04g, 20.6mmol) in 60mL of dichloromethane was added oxalyl chloride 2.15mL (24.6mmol) and dimethylformamide (0.1mL) upon cooling in an ice-water bath. The cooling bath was then removed and the reaction mixture was stirred at rt overnight. The solvent was removed under reduced pressure. The resulting material was diluted in ethyl acetate and concentrated in vacuo in order to remove residual HCl. The residual crude acid chloride was dissolved in 70mL of ether and was slowly added to a 100mL ether solution of diazomethane (77mmol). After stirring for 2hr at rt, the solvent was removed under vacuum.

- 149 -

The resulting yellow oil was chromatographed on silica gel column eluting with a gradient of hexane : ethyl acetate = 20 : 1 to 3 : 1 to give 4.66g (84%) of diazomethyl-(2-(S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl)-pent-4-en-yl)-ketone.

5

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub> 400MHz): δ 2.44(app. quint. 1H), 2.82(app. qunit. 1H), 3.43(br s. 1H), 4.98 & 5.02 (d of AB quart., 2H), 5.16 (br s, 1H), 5.63(m, 1H), 7.09 (dd, J=2.2Hz, 8.3Hz, 1H), 7.34(d, J=2.2Hz, 1H), 7.38 (d J=8.3Hz).

10

Step 2) 3-(R)-(3,4-Dichlorophenyl)-hex-4-en-oic acid

To a solution of the above diazoketone 4.56g (17.0mmol) in 15 340mL of tetrahydrofuran was added 170mL aqueous solution of silver nitrate 3.02g (17.8mmol). After stirring at rt overnight, tetrahydrofuran was removed under reduced pressure. The remaining aqueous layer was extracted with two 100mL portions of dichloromethane. The combined organic phases were washed with 20 brine, dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate, filtered, and concentrated. The resulting material was purified by silica gel column chromatography. Elution with dichloromethane : methanol = 10 : 1 gave 3.94g (90%) of 3-(R)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl)-hex-4-en-oic acid.

25 Step 3) (N-(3,5-Dimethylphenyl)-N-methyl)-((3-(R)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl)-hex-5-en-yl)-amide

The carboxylic acid from Step 2 (300mg, 1.16mmol) was dissolved in 5mL of dichloromethane. To it was added 0.131mL (1.50mmol) of oxalyl chloride followed by the addition of a drop of dimethylformamide upon cooling in an ice-water bath. The cooling bath was then removed and the reaction mixture was stirred at rt for 2hr. The solvent and residual HCl was removed as described above. The resulting crude acid chloride was then dissolved in 5mL of

- 150 -

dichloromethane. To it was added N-methyl-3,5-dimethylaniline 313mg (3.32mmol) (Prepared from 3,5-Dimethylaniline following the procedure of Barluenga J., Bayon A.M., and Asensio G. J. Chem. Soc. Chem. Comm. 1984 1334.) followed by the addition of triethylamine 5 0.5mL (3.6mmol) upon cooling in an ice-water bath. Then the cooling bath was removed and the reaction mixture was stirred at rt overnight. The solvent was removed under reduced pressure. The residual solid material was dissolved in 15mL of ethyl acetate and 5mL of water. The 10 organic phase was separated and aqueous phase was extracted with two 7mL portions of ethyl acetate. The combined organic phases were washed with brine, dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate, filtered, and concentrated. This crude material was chromatographed on silica 15 gel eluting with a gradient of 10 : 1 to 3 : 1 hexane-ethyl acetate to give 386mg of (N-(3,5-dimethylphenyl)-N-methyl)-((3-(R)-(3,4- dichlorophenyl)-hex-5-en-yl)-amide (88%).

20  $^1\text{H-NMR}(\text{CDCl}_3\ 400\text{MHz})$ :  $\delta$  2.15-2.35 (m., 4H), 2.29 (s, 6H), 3.09 (s, 3H), 3.26 (quint,  $J=7.2\text{Hz}$ , 1H), 4.88 (d,  $J=7.6\text{Hz}$ , 1H), 4.92 (s, 1H), 5.5 (m, 1H), 6.45 (s, 2H), 6.91 (dd,  $J=2\text{Hz}$ , 7Hz, 1H), 6.93 (s, 1H), 7.30 (d,  $J=8.3\text{Hz}$ , 1H).

25 Step 4) 3-(R)-(3,4-Dichlorophenyl)-5-(N-(3,5-dimethylphenyl)-methylamino)-5-oxo-pentanal

30 To 386mg (1.03mmol) of the product from the previous step was oxidized by osmium tetroxide to corresponding diol as described in Example 1 to give 413mg of crude diol. 381mg of this material was then dissolved in 10mL of benzene. To it was added lead tetraacetate 452mg (1.02mmol). After stirring for 1hr at rt, 5mL of water was added to quench the reaction. The reaction mixture was extracted with two 10mL portions of ethyl acetate. The combined organic phases were dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate, filtered, and concentrated. The crude material was chromatographed on silica gel eluting with

- 151 -

hexane : ethyl acetate = 2 : 1 to give 329mg of 3-(R)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl)-5-(N-(3,5-dimethylphenyl)-methylamino)-5-oxo-pentanal (94% over two steps).

5

Step 5) 1'-(3-(R)-(3,4-Dichlorophenyl)-5-(N-3,5-dimethylphenyl-methylamino)-5-oxo-pentyl)-1-methanesulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine)

10 Following the procedure described in Example 2, 107mg (0.287mmol) of this aldehyde was treated with 1-methanesulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine) hydrochloride to give 103mg (58% yield) of the title compound .

15  $^1\text{H-NMR}$  ( $\text{CDCl}_3$  400MHz) :  $\delta$  2.23 (s, 6H), 2.86 (s, 3H), 3.09 (s, 3H), 3.72 (s, 2H), 6.49 (s, 2H), 6.9-7.2 (s, 8H).

MS(CI) : 628 ( $\text{M}^{++} + 1: ^{35}\text{Cl}_2$ ), 630 ( $\text{M}^{++} + 1: ^{35}\text{Cl} \text{ & } ^{37}\text{Cl}$ )

20

### EXAMPLE 132

1'-(3-(R)-(3,4-Dichlorophenyl))-5-(3,5-dimethylphenyl)-5-oxo-pentyl)-1-methanesulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine)

25

Step 1) (N-Methoxy-N-methyl)-(3-(R)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl)-4-hexenyl)-amide

30

To a solution of 3-(R)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl)-5-hexenoic acid (Example 132, Step 1) 744mg (2.87mmol) was added 1-hydroxybenzotriazole hydrate 465mg (3.44mmol), and 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide hydrochloride 660mg (3.44mmol) with cooling in an ice-water bath. The cooling bath was

- 152 -

then removed. After stirring at rt for 1hr, to it was added 5mL dichloromethane suspension of N, O-dimethylhydroxyl amine hydrochloride 840mg (8.61mmol) and triethylamine 1.2mL (8.6mmol). After stirring overnight, the solvent was removed under vacuum, 5 diluted with ethyl acetate and water. The organic phase was separated. Aqueous phase was extracted twice with ethyl acetate. Combined organic phases were washed with brine, dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate, filtered, concentrated, chromatographed on silica gel eluting on a gradient of hexane : ethyl acetate = 5 : 1 to 2 : 1 to give 10 762mg (88%) of (N-methoxy-N-methyl)-(3-(R)-(3,4,-dichlorophenyl)-4-hexenyl)-amide.

15 <sup>1</sup>H-NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub> 400MHz): δ 2.34(m, 1H), 2.69 (App. d, 2H), 3.09 (s, 3H), 3.23 (quint. J=7.3Hz, 1H), 3.56 (s, 3H), 4.95 (s, 1H), 4.98 (app. d, 1H), 5.6 (m, 1H), 7.0 (dd, J=2.1Hz, 8.4Hz, 1H), 7.28 (d, J=2.1Hz, 1H), 20 7.32 (d, J=8.3Hz, 1H).

20 Step 2) 3-(R)-(3,4-Dichlorophenyl)-(N-methoxy-methylamino)-5-oxo-pentanal

25 This above material was subjected to the osmium tetroxide oxidation to the corresponding diol as described in Example 1. The crude product was then treated with 1.23g (2.77mmol) of lead tetraacetate as described in example 131, Step 4. Chromatographic purification on silica gel (eluant; dichloromethane : ethyl acetate = 5 : 1) afforded 618mg (81% two steps) of 3-(R)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl)-(N-methoxy-methylamino)-5-oxo-pentanal.

30

Step 3) 1'-(3-(R)-(3,4-Dichlorophenyl)-5-(N-methoxy-methylamino)-5-oxo-pentyl)-1-methanesulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine)

- 153 -

A sample of 332mg (1.09mmol) of the aldehyde from Step 2 above was subjected to reductive amination with 1-methanesulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine) hydrochloride as described in Example 2 to give 369mg (61%) of 1'-(3-(R)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl)-5-(N-methoxy)-N-(methyl)amino)-5-oxo-pentyl)-1-methanesulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine).

<sup>10</sup> <sup>1</sup>H-NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub> 400MHz): δ 2.87 (s 3H), 3.10 (s, 3H), 3.60 (s, 3H), 7.0-7.4 (m, 7H).

<sup>15</sup> Step 4) 1'-(3-(R)-(3,4-Dichlorophenyl))-5-(3,5-dimethylphenyl)-5-oxo-pentyl)-1-methanesulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine)

<sup>20</sup> To a 1.2mL THF solution of the amide from Step 3 above (73mg, 0.13mmol) was added 1.1mL of 0.7M 3,5-dimethylphenylmagnesium bromide solution in THF (prepared from 5-bromo-m-xylene and magnesium turnings in THF). Then the reaction mixture was heated to 50°C. After stirring for 1.5hr, the reaction mixture was allowed to cool down to rt and the reaction was quenched by sat NH<sub>4</sub>Cl aq solution. THF was removed under reduced pressure, diluted with ethyl acetate. The organic phase was separated and the aqueous phase was extracted twice with ethyl acetate. Combined organic phases were dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate, filtered, concentrated, chromatographed on silica gel eluting with a gradient of dichloromethane : ethyl acetate = 10 : 1 to 1 : 1 to give 55mg (70%) of the title compound.

<sup>25</sup> <sup>30</sup> <sup>1</sup>H-NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub> 400MHz): δ 2.34 (s, 6H), 2.86 (s, 3H), 3.23 (m, 2H), 3.74 (s, 2H), 7.0-7.5 (m, 10H).

MS (CI): 599 (M<sup>+</sup>+1: <sup>35</sup>Cl<sub>x</sub>2), 601 (M<sup>+</sup>+1: <sup>35</sup>Cl & <sup>37</sup>Cl).

### EXAMPLE 133

- 154 -

1'-(3-(R)-(3,4-Dichlorophenyl)-6-(3,5-dimethylphenyl)-5-oxo-hexyl)-1-methanesulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine)

5        70mg (0.126mmol) of 1'-(3-(R)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl)-5-(N-methoxy)-N-(methyl)amino)-5-oxo-pentyl)-1-methanesulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine) (Example 132, Step 3) was treated with 0.8M THF solution of 3,5-dimethyl benzylmagnesium chloride as in the case of Example 132. The crude material was chromatographed on  
10      silica gel in the same solvent system to afford 33mg of the title compound (43%).

15       $^1\text{H-NMR}$  ( $\text{CDCl}_3$  400MHz):  $\delta$  2.24 (s, 6H), 2.86 (s, 3H), 3.47 (s, 2H), 3.72 (s, 2H), 6.64 (s, 2H), 6.8-7.4 (m, 8H).

20      MS (CI): 613 ( $\text{M}^++1: ^{35}\text{Cl}_2$ ), 615 ( $\text{M}^++1: ^{35}\text{Cl} \& ^{37}\text{Cl}$ ).

EXAMPLE 134

20      1'-(3-(S)-(3,4-Dichlorophenyl)-6-(3,5-dimethylphenyl)-6-oxo-hexyl)-1-methanesulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine)

25      3-(R)-(3,4-Dichlorophenyl)-4-hexenoic acid (Example 131, Step 2) was converted into 4-(S)-(3,4-Dichlorophenyl)-5-heptenoic acid as in Example 131, Steps 1 and 2. 4-(S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl)-4-heptenoic acid was converted to (N-methoxyl-N-methyl)-(4-(S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl)-6-heptenyl)-amide followed by treatment with 3,5-dimethylphenylmagnesium bromide as described in Example 132, Step 4 to give the title compound.

30       $^1\text{H-NMR}$  ( $\text{CDCl}_3$  400MHz):  $\delta$  2.32 (s, 6H), 2.80 (s, 3H), 3.74 (s, 3H), 7.0-7.4 (m, 10H).

- 155 -

MS (CI): 613 (M<sup>+</sup>+1: <sup>35</sup>Cl<sub>x</sub>2), 615 (M<sup>+</sup>+1: <sup>35</sup>Cl & <sup>37</sup>Cl).

EXAMPLE 135

5

1'-(3-(S)-(3,4-Dichlorophenyl)-6-(3,5-dimethylphenyl)-5-(RS)-methyl-6-oxo-hexyl)-1-methanesulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine)

10 Step 1) 4-(S)-(3,4-Dichlorophenyl)-1-(3,5-dimethylphenyl)-hept-6-ene-1-one

15 1.42g (4.50mmol) of (N-Methoxy-N-methyl)-(4-(S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl)-6-heptenyl)-amide (prepared in Example 134) was dissolved in 20mL of dry THF. To it added 10mL THF solution of 3,5-dimethylphenylmagnesium bromide prepared from 1.8g (9.6mmol) of 5-bromo-m-xylene and 463mg of magnesium turnings. After stirring for 2hr at rt, the reaction was quenched with saturated aqueous ammonium chloride solution. THF was removed under reduced pressure. The residual material was diluted with ethyl acetate. The organic phase was separated, aqueous phase was extracted twice with ethyl acetate. Combined organic phases were washed with brine, dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate, filtered, concentrated, chromatographed on silica gel eluting with a gradient of hexane : ethyl acetate = 10 : 1 to 5 : 1 to give 1.57g of 4-(S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl)-1-(3,5-dimethylphenyl)-hept-6-ene-1-one (97%).

20 Step 2) 4-(R)-(3,4-Dichlorophenyl)-1-(3,5-dimethylphenyl)-2-(RS)-methyl-hept-6-ene-1-one

25 30

26 Hexamethyldisilazane (0.108mL, 0.512mmol), and 0.089mL of hexamethylphosphoramide were dissolved in 2mL of dry THF. To it was added 0.306mL (0.49mmol) of n-butyllithium (1.6M hexane solution) after cooling in an ice-water bath. After stirring for 20min,

- 156 -

the ice-water bath was replaced by a dry ice-acetone bath and 2mL of a dry THF solution of 4-(S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl)-1-(3,5-dimethylphenyl)-hept-6-ene-1-one (154mg, 0.426mmol) was added via syringe. After stirring for 1hr, 0.066mL (1.06mmol) of iodomethane was added. The cooling bath was removed and the mixture stirred at rt overnight. The solvent was then removed under reduced pressure and the residual material was diluted in ethyl acetate and water. The organic phase was separated. The aqueous phase was extracted twice with ethyl acetate. The combined organic phases were washed with brine, dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate, filtered, concentrated, and chromatographed on silica gel eluting with a gradient of hexane : ethyl acetate = 10 : 1 to 7 : 1 to give 150mg of 4-(R)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl)-1-(3,5-dimethylphenyl)-2-(R &S)-methyl-hept-6-ene-1-one (94%). This was a 1 to 1 mixture of two diastereomers as revealed by proton NMR.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub> 400MHz):  $\delta$  1.06 ( d, J=7Hz, 1.5H), 1.14 ( d, J=6.7Hz, 1.5H), 2.30, 2.31 (s, 6H), 2.5 (m, 0.5H), 2.6 (m, 0.5H), 3.1-3.2 (m, 1H), 4.9 (m, 2H), 5.5 (m, 1H), 6.8-7.4 (m, 6H).

20

Step 3) 3-(S)-(3,4-Dichlorophenyl)-5-(RS)-methyl-6-(3,5-dimethylphenyl)-6-oxo-hexanal

25 The product from Step 2 above was subjected to osmium tetroxide oxidation followed by the treatment with sodium periodate as described in Example 1 to give 3-(S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl)-5-(RS)-methyl-6-(3,5-dimethylphenyl)-6-oxo-hexanal.

30

Step 4) 1'-(3-(S)-(3,4-Dichlorophenyl)-6-(3,5-dimethylphenyl)-5-(RS)-methyl-6-oxo-hexyl)-1-methanesulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine)

- 157 -

This product from Step 3 above was subjected to reductive amination with 1-methanesulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine) as described in Example 2 to give the title compound.

5       $^1\text{H-NMR}$  ( $\text{CDCl}_3$  400MHz):  $\delta$  1.05 (d,  $J=7\text{Hz}$ ), 1.08 (d,  $J=6.7\text{Hz}$ ), 2.30 & 2.32 (s, 6H), 2.89 (s, 3H), 3.72 (S, 2H), 6.8-7.0 (m, 10H).

MS (CI): 627 ( $\text{M}^++1: ^{35}\text{Cl}_2$ ), 629 ( $\text{M}^++1: ^{35}\text{Cl} \& ^{37}\text{Cl}$ ).

10

### EXAMPLE 136

1'-(-(S)-(3,4-Dichlorophenyl)-4-(3,5-(bistrifluoromethyl)benzyloxy)-1-acetyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine)

15      Step A:      2-(S)-(3,4-Dichlorophenyl)-4-penten-1-ol

To a solution of 2-(S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl)-4-pentenoic acid (7.0 gm) (prepared as described by J. Hale et. al., *Bioorganic & Medicinal Chemistry Letters* **1993**, 3, 319-322.) in ether (50 mL) at r.t. was added portionwise over 5 min solid lithium aluminum hydride (700 mg). The reaction was heated to 40 °C for 3 hr and then stirred at r.t. for 16 hr. The reaction was poured into water containing 25 mL of 2N NaOH and extracted twice with ether. The ether layers were washed with brine, combined and dried over  $\text{Na}_2\text{SO}_4$ . Flash chromatography afforded the title compound (4.5 gm) as an oil.  $[\alpha]_D = +14$  (EtOH,  $c = 1.5$ ).

20      Step B:      2-(S)-(3,4-Dichlorophenyl)-1-(3,5-(bistrifluoromethyl)benzyloxy)-4-pentene

25      To a solution of 2-(S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl)-4-penten-1-ol (1.0 gm) in DMF (25 mL) was added sodium hydride (175 mg) while cooled in an ice bath. After 1 min, 3,5-(bistrifluoromethyl)benzyl bromide (2.0 gm) was added followed by a second portion of sodium hydride (175 mg). After 1 hr, the reaction was poured into water and extracted twice with ether. The ether layers were washed with brine, combined and dried over  $\text{Na}_2\text{SO}_4$ . Flash chromatography (hexanes, then 2 and 5% ethyl acetate/hexanes) afforded the title compound (2.0 gm) as an oil.

- 158 -

5 NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>):  $\delta$  2.30-2.40 and 2.50-2.60 (2 m, 2 H), 2.90-3.00 (m, 1 H), 3.55-3.65 (d of AB q, 2 H, J = 6 and 9 Hz), 4.54 (AB q, 2 H, J = 13 Hz), 4.90-5.00 (m, 2 H), 5.55-5.70 (m, 1 H), 7.04 (dd, 1 H, J = 2 and 8 Hz), 7.30 (d, 1 h, J = 2 Hz), 7.36 (d, 1 h, J = 8 Hz), 7.64 (s, 2 h), 7.76 (s, 1 H).

10 Step C: 3-(S)-(3,4-Dichlorophenyl)-4-(3,5-  
(bistrifluoromethyl)benzyloxy)butan-1-ol

15 A solution of 2-(S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl)-1-(3,5-  
(bistrifluoromethyl)benzyloxy)-4-pentene (1.5 gm) in methanol (50 mL) was cooled to -70 °C in a dry ice/acetone bath and ozone bubbled thru for 15 min until a blue coloration was seen. The solution was purged with N<sub>2</sub> for 10 min and sodium borohydride was added. The reaction was allowed to warm to r.t. and was stirred for 2 hr. The volatiles were removed in vacuo and the residue was flash chromatographed (30 then 50% ethyl acetate/hexanes) to give the title compound as a clear oil.

20 NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>):  $\delta$  1.78-1.88 and 2.00-2.10 (2 m, 2 H), 3.05-3.15 (m, 1 H), 3.45-3.55 (m, 1 H), 3.55-3.68 (2 m, 3 H), 4.55 (AB q, 2 H, J = 13 Hz), 7.04 (dd, 1 H, J = 2 and 8 Hz), 7.32 (d, 1 h, J = 2 Hz), 7.36 (d, 1 h, J = 8 Hz), 7.65 (s, 2 h), 7.76 (s, 1 H).

25 Step D: 4-Bromo-2-(S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl)-1-(3,5-  
(bistrifluoromethyl)benzyloxy)butane

30 3-(S)-(3,4-Dichlorophenyl)-4-(3,5-  
(bistrifluoromethyl)benzyloxy)butan-1-ol from Step C (500 mg) was converted to the title compound (530 mg) with Ph<sub>3</sub>P-Br<sub>2</sub> as described in Example 20, Step B.

Step E: 1'-(3-(S)-(3,4-Dichlorophenyl)-4-(3,5-  
(bistrifluoromethyl)benzyloxy)-1-acetyl-spiro(indoline-  
3,4'-piperidine)).

4-Bromo-2-(S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl)-1-(3,5-  
(bistrifluoromethyl)benzyloxy)butane (30 mg) from Step D was converted to the title compound (42 mg) as described in Example 20, Step C.

- 159 -

NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>): δ 1.48-2.05 (m, 10 H), 2.14 and 2.34 (2 s, 3 H), 2.10-  
2.25 (m, 2 H), 2.70-2.85 (m, 2 H), 2.90 (m, 1 H), 3.48-3.58 (m, 2 H),  
3.70 and 3.84 (2 s, 2 H), 4.55 (AB q, 2 H, J = 13 Hz), 6.90-7.15 (m, 4  
h), 7.33 (d, 1 h, J = 2 Hz), 7.37 (d, 1 h, J = 8 Hz), 7.66 (s, 2 h), 7.76  
5 (s, 1 H), 8.18 (d, 1 h, 8 Hz).

10

15

20

25

30

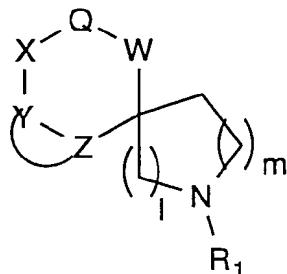
- 160 -

WHAT IS CLAIMED IS:

1. A compound of formula I

5

10



I

15 or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, wherein the nitrogen expressly shown above is optionally quaternized with C1-4alkyl or phenylC1-4alkyl or is optionally present as the N-oxide (N+O-), and wherein:  
I and m are each independently 0, 1, 2, 3, 4, or 5, with the proviso that  
20 1 + m is equal to 1, 2, 3, 4, or 5;

R1 is selected from a group consisting of:

- (1) hydrogen,
- (2) linear or branched C1-8 alkyl, linear or branched C2-8 alkenyl, or linear or branched C2-8 alkynyl, wherein the C1-8 alkyl, C2-8 alkenyl or C2-8 alkynyl is di or tri or tetra substituted, the substituents independently selected from:
  - (a) hydroxy,
  - (b) oxo,
  - (c) cyano,
  - (d) halogén which is defined to include Br, Cl, I, and F,
  - (e) trifluoromethyl,
  - (f) phenyl or mono, di or trisubstituted phenyl, the substituents independently selected from

- 161 -

(1) phenyl,  
(2) hydroxy,  
(3) C<sub>1</sub>-3alkyl,  
(4) cyano,  
5 (5) halogen,  
(6) trifluoromethyl,  
(7) -NR<sub>6</sub>COR<sub>7</sub>, wherein R<sub>6</sub> and R<sub>7</sub> are independently selected from:  
10 (a) hydrogen,  
(b) C<sub>1</sub>-6 alkyl, or mono or disubstituted C<sub>1</sub>-6 alkyl, the substitutents independently selected from  
15 (1) phenyl, unsubstituted or substituted with hydroxy, C<sub>1</sub>-3alkyl, cyano, halogen, trifluoromethyl or C<sub>1</sub>-4alkoxy,  
20 (2) hydroxy,  
(3) oxo,  
(4) cyano,  
(5) halogen,  
(6) trifluoromethyl,  
25 (c) phenyl, pyridinyl or thiophene or mono, di or trisubstituted phenyl, pyridinyl or thiophene, the substitutents independently selected from  
(1) hydroxy,  
(2) C<sub>1</sub>-4alkyl,  
(3) cyano,  
(4) halogen,  
30 (5) trifluoromethyl,  
(d) C<sub>1</sub>-3alkyloxy,  
or

R<sub>6</sub> and R<sub>7</sub> are joined together to form a 5-, 6-, or 7-membered monocyclic saturated ring containing 1 or 2 heteroatoms independently selected from

- 162 -

nitrogen, oxygen, and sulfur, and in which the ring is unsubstituted or mono or disubstituted, the substituents independently selected from

- 5 (a) hydroxy,
- (b) oxo,
- (c) cyano,
- (d) halogen,
- (e) trifluoromethyl,

- 10 (8) -NR<sub>6</sub>CO<sub>2</sub>R<sub>7</sub>,
- (9) -NR<sub>6</sub>CONHR<sub>7</sub>,
- (10) -NR<sub>6</sub>S(O)<sub>j</sub>R<sub>7</sub>, wherein j is 1 or 2,
- (11) -CONR<sub>6</sub>R<sub>7</sub>,
- (12) -COR<sub>6</sub>,
- (13) -CO<sub>2</sub>R<sub>6</sub>,

- 15 (14) -OR<sub>6</sub>,
- (15) -S(O)<sub>k</sub>R<sub>6</sub> wherein k is 0, 1 or 2,
- (16) heteroaryl, wherein heteroaryl is selected from the group consisting of:

- 20 (1) benzimidazolyl,
- (2) benzofuranyl,
- (3) benzoxazolyl,
- (4) furanyl,
- (5) imidazolyl,
- (6) indolyl,
- (7) isoxazolyl,
- (8) isothiazolyl,
- (9) oxadiazolyl,
- (10) oxazolyl,
- (11) pyrazinyl,
- (12) pyrazolyl,
- (13) pyridyl,
- (14) pyrimidyl,
- (15) pyrrolyl,
- (16) quinolyl,

- 163 -

5

- (17) tetrazolyl,
- (18) thiadiazolyl,
- (19) thiazolyl,
- (20) thiaryl, and
- (21) triazolyl,

wherein the heteroaryl is unsubstituted or mono di or trisubstituted, the substituents independently selected from,

10

- (a) hydroxy,
- (b) oxo,
- (c) cyano,
- (d) halogen,
- (e) trifluoromethyl,

15

- (g) -NR<sub>6</sub>R<sub>7</sub>,
- (h) -NR<sub>6</sub>COR<sub>7</sub>,
- (i) -NR<sub>6</sub>CO<sub>2</sub>R<sub>7</sub>,
- (j) -NR<sub>6</sub>CONHR<sub>7</sub>,
- (k) -NR<sub>6</sub>S(O)<sub>j</sub>R<sub>7</sub>,

20

- (l) -CONR<sub>6</sub>R<sub>7</sub>,
- (m) -COR<sub>6</sub>,
- (n) -CO<sub>2</sub>R<sub>6</sub>,
- (o) -OR<sub>6</sub>,
- (p) -S(O)<sub>k</sub>R<sub>6</sub>,

25

- (q) heteroaryl, wherein heteroaryl is selected from the group consisting of:

30

- (1) benzimidazolyl,
- (2) benzofuranyl,
- (3) benzoxazolyl,
- (4) furanyl,
- (5) imidazolyl,
- (6) indolyl,
- (7) isoxazolyl,
- (8) isothiazolyl,
- (9) oxadiazolyl,

- 164 -

- (10) oxazolyl,
- (11) pyrazinyl,
- (12) pyrazolyl,
- (13) pyridyl,
- 5 (14) pyrimidyl,
- (15) pyrrolyl,
- (16) quinolyl,
- (17) tetrazolyl,
- (18) thiadiazolyl,
- 10 (19) thiazolyl,
- (20) thienyl,
- (21) triazolyl,

wherein the heteroaryl is unsubstituted or mono di or trisubstituted, the substituents independently selected  
15 from

- (1) phenyl,
- (2) hydroxy,
- (3) oxo,
- (4) cyano,
- 20 (5) halogen,
- (6) trifluoromethyl,

wherein the nitrogen of definition R1 2(g) as defined above is optionally  
25 quaternized with C1-4alkyl or phenylC1-4alkyl or is optionally present  
as the N-oxide (N<sup>+</sup>O<sup>-</sup>);

W is selected from the group consisting of

- (1) a covalent bond
- (2) C1-3 alkyl, unsubstituted or substituted with
  - (a) oxo,
  - (b) OR<sub>6</sub>,
  - (c) halogen,
  - (d) trifluoromethyl,
  - 30 (e) phenyl or mono, di or trisubstituted phenyl, the substituents independently selected from

- 165 -

- (1) hydroxy,
- (2) cyano,
- (3) halogen,
- (4) trifluoromethyl,

5 (3)  $S(O)k$ ,

(4)  $(C_{1-3} \text{ alkyl})-S(O)k$ ,

(5)  $S(O)k-(C_{1-2} \text{ alkyl})$ ,

(6)  $S(O)k-NH$ ,

(7)  $S(O)j-NH(C_{1-2} \text{ alkyl})$ ,

10 (8)  $S(O)j-NR_6$ ,

(9)  $S(O)j-NR_6-(C_{1-2} \text{ alkyl})$ ,

(10) CONH,

(11) CONH-(C<sub>1-2</sub> alkyl),

(12) CONR<sub>6</sub>,

15 (13) CONR<sub>6</sub>-(C<sub>1-2</sub> alkyl),

(14) CO<sub>2</sub>,

(15) CO<sub>2</sub>-(C<sub>1-2</sub> alkyl);

Q = NR<sub>2</sub>, O, S, S(O), or SO<sub>2</sub>, with the proviso that when W is a covalent bond and X is C<sub>1-3</sub>alkyl, then Q must be NR<sub>2</sub>;

20 R<sub>2</sub> is selected from a group consisting of:

- (1) hydrogen,
- (2) C<sub>1-8</sub> linear or branched alkyl, unsubstituted, monosubstituted or multiply substituted with
  - (a) -OR<sub>6</sub>,
  - (b) = O,
  - (c) -NHCOR<sub>6</sub>,
  - (d) -NR<sub>6</sub>R<sub>7</sub>,
  - (e) -CN,
  - (f) -halogen,
  - (g) -CF<sub>3</sub>,

25

- (i) -phenyl, unsubstituted or substituted, wherein the substitutents are selected from the group consisting of

30

- (1) hydroxy,

- 166 -

- (2) cyano,
- (3) halogen,
- (4) trifluoromethyl,

(3)  $S(O)R_8$ , wherein  $R_8$  is C1-6 linear or branched alkyl,  
5        unsubstituted, mono di or trisubstituted with

- (a) hydroxy,
- (b) oxo,
- (c) cyano,
- (d)  $-OR_6$ ,
- 10        (e)  $-NR_6R_7$ ,
- (f)  $-NR_6COR_7$ ,
- (g) -halogen, and
- (h)  $-CF_3$ ,
- (i) -phenyl or mono, di or trisubstituted phenyl,  
15        the substituents independently selected from
  - (1) hydroxy,
  - (2) oxo,
  - (3) cyano,
  - (4)  $-NHR_6$ ,
  - 20        (5)  $-NR_6R_7$ ,
  - (6)  $-NR_6COR_7$ ,
  - (7) -halogen,
  - (8)  $-CF_3$ , and
  - (9) C1-3 alkyl,
- 25        (4)  $SO_2R_8$ , or
  - (5)  $COR_8$ ,
  - (6)  $CO_2R_8$ ;
  - (7)  $CONR_7R_8$ ;

30        X is selected from the group consisting of

- (1) a covalent bond
- (2) C1-3 alkyl, unsubstituted or substituted with
  - (a) oxo,
  - (b)  $OR_6$ ,

- 167 -

- (c) halogen,
- (d) trifluoromethyl,
- (e) phenyl or mono, di or trisubstituted phenyl,  
the substituents independently selected from
  - 5 (1) hydroxy
  - (2) OR<sub>6</sub>,
  - (3) halogen, and
  - (4) trifluoromethyl,
  - (3) S(O)k,
  - 10 (4) (C<sub>1-3</sub> alkyl)S(O)k,
  - (5) S(O)k(C<sub>1-2</sub> alkyl),
  - (6) NHS(O)j,
  - (7) NH(C<sub>1-2</sub> alkyl)S(O)j,
  - (8) S(O)jNR<sub>6</sub>,
  - 15 (9) S(O)j-NR<sub>6</sub>-(C<sub>1-2</sub> alkyl),
  - (10) NHCO,
  - (11) NHCO-(C<sub>1-2</sub> alkyl),
  - (12) NR<sub>6</sub>CO,
  - (13) NR<sub>6</sub>-(C<sub>1-2</sub> alkyl)CO,
  - 20 (14) O(CO), and
  - (15) (C<sub>1-2</sub> alkyl)O(CO),

Y-Z considered together are 2 adjoining atoms of the ring



said ring being an phenyl, naphthyl or heteroaryl group, with the heteroaryls selected from the group consisting of:

- 30 (1) benzimidazolyl,
- (2) benzofuranyl,
- (3) benzoxazolyl,
- (4) furanyl,
- (5) imidazolyl,
- (6) indolyl,

- 168 -

- (7) isoxazolyl,
- (8) isothiazolyl,
- (9) oxadiazolyl,
- (10) oxazolyl,
- 5 (11) pyrazinyl,
- (12) pyrazolyl,
- (13) pyridyl,
- (14) pyrimidyl,
- (15) pyrrolyl,
- 10 (16) quinolyl,
- (17) tetrazolyl,
- (18) thiadiazolyl,
- (19) thiazolyl,
- (20) thienyl,
- 15 (21) triazolyl,

and wherein the aryl or heteroaryl group is unsubstituted, mono, di or tri substituted, the substituents selected from:

- (a) hydrogen,
- (b) C<sub>1</sub>-6 alkyl, branched or unbranched, unsubstituted or mono or disubstituted, the substituents being selected from hydrogen and hydroxy,
- 20 (c) oxo
- (d) OR<sub>6</sub>, wherein R<sub>6</sub> is as defined immediately above,
- (e) halogen,
- 25 (f) trifluoromethyl,
- (g) nitro,
- (h) cyano,
- (i) NR<sub>6</sub>R<sub>7</sub>,
- (j) NR<sub>6</sub>COR<sub>7</sub>,
- 30 (k) NR<sub>6</sub>CO<sub>2</sub>R<sub>7</sub>,
- (l) NHS(O)<sub>j</sub>R<sub>6</sub>,
- (m) NR<sub>6</sub>S(O)<sub>j</sub>R<sub>7</sub>,
- (n) CONR<sub>6</sub>R<sub>7</sub>,
- (o) COR<sub>6</sub>,

- 169 -

- (p)  $\text{CO}_2\text{R}_6$ ,
- (q)  $\text{S(O)}_j\text{R}_6$ ,
- (r) heteroaryl, wherein heteroaryl is selected from the group consisting of:
  - 5 (a) benzimidazolyl,
  - (b) benzofuranyl,
  - (c) benzoxazolyl,
  - (d) furanyl,
  - (e) imidazolyl,
  - 10 (f) indolyl,
  - (g) isoxazolyl,
  - (h) isothiazolyl,
  - (i) oxadiazolyl,
  - (j) oxazolyl,
  - 15 (k) pyrazinyl,
  - (l) pyrazolyl,
  - (m) pyridyl,
  - (n) pyrimidyl,
  - (o) pyrrolyl,
  - 20 (p) quinolyl,
  - (q) tetrazolyl,
  - (r) thiadiazolyl,
  - (s) thiazolyl,
  - (t) thienyl,
  - 25 (u) triazolyl,
- and wherein the heteroaryl is unsubstituted mono or di substituted, the substituents selected from
  - (1) hydrogen,
  - (2) C<sub>1</sub>-6 alkyl, branched or unbranched, unsubstituted or mono or disubstituted, the substituents being selected from hydrogen and hydroxy,
  - 30 (3) oxo
  - (4)  $\text{OR}_6$ ,
  - (5) trifluoromethyl,

- 170 -

- (6) nitro,
- (7) cyano,
- (8) NR<sub>6</sub>R<sub>7</sub>,
- (9) NR<sub>6</sub>COR<sub>7</sub>,
- 5 (10) NR<sub>6</sub>CO<sub>2</sub>R<sub>7</sub>,
- (11) NHS(O)<sub>j</sub>R<sub>6</sub>,
- (12) NR<sub>6</sub>S(O)<sub>j</sub>R<sub>7</sub>,
- (18) CONR<sub>6</sub>R<sub>7</sub>,
- (19) COR<sub>6</sub>,
- 10 (20) CO<sub>2</sub>R<sub>6</sub>,
- (21) S(O)<sub>j</sub>R<sub>6</sub>, and
- (22) phenyl.

2. A compound according to Claim 1 wherein:

15

1 + m is equal to 2, 3, or 4;

Y and Z are each individually a carbon atom;

R<sub>1</sub> is selected from a group consisting of:

20

C<sub>1</sub>, C<sub>2</sub>, C<sub>3</sub>, C<sub>4</sub>, C<sub>5</sub>, C<sub>6</sub>, C<sub>7</sub> or C<sub>8</sub> linear or branched alkyl, di, tri or tetra substituted, the substitutents independently selected from:

25

- (a) hydroxy,
- (b) Cl or F,
- (c) trifluoromethyl,
- (d) phenyl or mono, di or trisubstituted phenyl, the substitutents independently selected from

30

- (1) phenyl,
- (2) hydroxy,
- (3) C<sub>1</sub>-3alkyl,
- (4) cyano,
- (5) halogen,
- (6) trifluoromethyl,
- (7) -NR<sub>6</sub>COR<sub>7</sub>, wherein R<sub>6</sub> and R<sub>7</sub> are independently selected from:

- 171 -

- (a) hydrogen,
- (b) C<sub>1</sub>-6 alkyl, or mono or disubstituted C<sub>1</sub>-6 alkyl, the substitutents independently selected from
  - (1) phenyl, unsubstituted or substituted with hydroxy, C<sub>1</sub>-3alkyl, cyano, halogen, trifluoromethyl or C<sub>1</sub>-4alkoxy,
  - (2) hydroxy,
  - (3) oxo,
  - (4) cyano,
  - (5) halogen,
  - (6) trifluoromethyl,
- (c) phenyl, pyridinyl or thiophene or mono, di or trisubstituted phenyl , pyridinyl or thiophene , the substitutents independently selected from
  - (1) hydroxy,
  - (2) C<sub>1</sub>-4alkyl,
  - (3) cyano,
  - (4) halogen,
  - (5) trifluoromethyl,
- (d) C<sub>1</sub>-3alkyloxy,

or

- R<sub>6</sub> and R<sub>7</sub> are joined together to form a 5-, 6-, or 7-membered monocyclic saturated ring containing 1 or 2 heteroatoms independently selected from nitrogen, oxygen, and sulfur, and in which the ring is unsubstituted or mono or disubstituted, the substituents independently selected from
  - (a) hydroxy,
  - (b) oxo,
  - (c) cyano,
  - (d) halogen,
  - (e) trifluoromethyl,

- 172 -

- (8) -NR<sub>6</sub>CO<sub>2</sub>R<sub>7</sub>,
- (9) -NR<sub>6</sub>CONHR<sub>7</sub>,
- (10) -NR<sub>6</sub>S(O)<sub>j</sub>R<sub>7</sub>, wherein j is 1 or 2,
- (11) -CONR<sub>6</sub>R<sub>7</sub>,
- 5 (12) -COR<sub>6</sub>,
- (13) -CO<sub>2</sub>R<sub>6</sub>,
- (14) -OR<sub>6</sub>,
- (15) -S(O)<sub>k</sub>R<sub>6</sub>,
- (16) heteroaryl, wherein heteroaryl is selected from the group consisting of:

- (a) pyrazinyl,
- (b) pyrazolyl,
- (c) pyridyl,
- (d) pyrimidyl, and
- 15 (e) thienyl,

wherein the heteroaryl is unsubstituted or mono di or trisubstituted, the substituents independently selected from,

- (a) hydroxy,
- (b) oxo,
- (c) cyano,
- (d) halogen,
- (e) trifluoromethyl,

- (e) -NR<sub>6</sub>COR<sub>7</sub>,
- 20 (f) -NR<sub>6</sub>CO<sub>2</sub>R<sub>7</sub>,
- (g) -NR<sub>6</sub>CONHR<sub>7</sub>,
- (h) -NHS(O)<sub>j</sub>R<sub>6</sub>,
- (i) -COR<sub>6</sub>,
- (j) -OR<sub>6</sub>,
- 25 (k) heteroaryl, wherein heteroaryl is selected from the group consisting of:
  - (1) pyrazinyl,
  - (2) pyrazolyl,
  - (3) pyridyl,

- 173 -

(4) pyrimidyl, and  
(5) thienyl,

wherein the heteroaryl is unsubstituted or mono di or  
trisubstituted, the substituents independently selected  
from

(a) phenyl,  
(b) hydroxy,  
(c) oxo,  
(d) cyano,  
(e) halogen, and  
(f) trifluoromethyl,

5

10

W is selected from the group consisting of

(1) a covalent bond  
(2) C<sub>1</sub>-3 alkyl, unsubstituted or substituted with oxo, and  
15 (3) S(O)<sub>2</sub>;

Q = NR<sub>2</sub>, S, S(O) or SO<sub>2</sub>, with the proviso that when W is a covalent  
bond and X is C<sub>1</sub>-3alkyl, then Q must be NR<sub>2</sub>;

R<sub>2</sub> is selected from a group consisting of:

(1) hydrogen,  
20 (2) C<sub>1</sub>, C<sub>2</sub>, C<sub>3</sub>, C<sub>4</sub>, C<sub>5</sub>, C<sub>6</sub>, C<sub>7</sub> or C<sub>8</sub> linear or  
branched alkyl, unsubstituted, monosubstituted or multiply substituted  
with

25

(a) -OR<sub>6</sub>,  
(b) = O,  
(c) -NR<sub>6</sub>R<sub>7</sub>,  
(3) SO<sub>2</sub>R<sub>8</sub>, wherein R<sub>8</sub> is C<sub>1</sub>-4 linear or branched alkyl,  
unsubstituted, mono or disubstituted with

30

(a) -OR<sub>6</sub>,  
(b) -NHCOR<sub>6</sub>,  
(c) -NR<sub>6</sub>R<sub>7</sub>,  
(d) -halogen,  
(e) -phenyl;  
(4) COR<sub>8</sub>, or  
(5) CO<sub>2</sub>R<sub>8</sub>;

- 174 -

(6) CONR<sub>7</sub>R<sub>8</sub>;

X is selected from the group consisting of

- (1) a covalent bond, and
- (2) C<sub>1</sub>-3 alkyl;

5 Y-Z considered together are 2 adjoining atoms of the ring



10 said ring being an phenyl, naphthyl or heteroaryl, with the heteroaryl selected from

- (1) pyrazinyl,
- (2) pyrazolyl,
- (3) pyridyl,
- (4) pyrimidyl, and
- (5) thienyl.

3. A compound according to Claim 2 wherein:

20 1 + m is equal to 2, 3, or 4;

R<sub>1</sub> is selected from a group consisting of:

C<sub>1</sub>, C<sub>2</sub>, C<sub>3</sub>, C<sub>4</sub>, C<sub>5</sub> or C<sub>6</sub> linear or branched alkyl, di or tri substituted, the substituents independently selected from:

- (a) hydroxy,
- (b) Cl or F,
- (c) phenyl or mono, di or trisubstituted phenyl, the substituents independently selected from

- (1) phenyl,
- (2) hydroxy,
- (3) C<sub>1</sub>-3alkyl,
- (4) cyano,
- (5) halogen,
- (6) trifluoromethyl,

- 175 -

5

(d)  $-\text{NR}_6\text{COR}_7$ , wherein  $\text{R}_6$  is hydrogen or  $\text{C}_1\text{-3}$  alkyl and  $\text{R}_7$  is phenyl, pyridinyl or thiophene, phenyl $\text{C}_1\text{-3}$ alkyl, pyridinyl $\text{C}_1\text{-3}$ alkyl or thiophenel $\text{C}_1\text{-3}$ alkyl, wherein the phenyl, pyridinyl or thiophene, phenyl $\text{C}_1\text{-3}$ alkyl, pyridinyl $\text{C}_1\text{-3}$ alkyl or thiophenel $\text{C}_1\text{-3}$ alkyl, is optionally substituted with Cl, F,  $\text{CF}_3$  or  $\text{C}_1\text{-3}$ alkyl,

(e)  $-\text{NHS(O)}_j\text{R}_6$ ,

(f)  $-\text{COR}_6$ ,

(h)  $-\text{OR}_6$ ,

10  $\text{W}$  is selected from the group consisting of

(1) a covalent bond, and

(2)  $\text{C}_1\text{-3}$  alkyl, unsubstituted or substituted with oxo;

$\text{Q}$  is  $\text{NR}_2$ ,  $\text{S}$ ,  $\text{S(O)}$  or  $\text{S(O)}_2$ ;

$\text{R}_2$  is selected from a group consisting of:

15 (1) hydrogen,

(2)  $\text{C}_1$ ,  $\text{C}_2$ ,  $\text{C}_3$  or  $\text{C}_4$  linear or branched alkyl, unsubstituted, monosubstituted or disubstituted with oxo,  $\text{OR}_6$ ,  $\text{NR}_6\text{R}_7$  or phenyl,

(3)  $\text{SO}_2\text{R}_8$ ,

20 (4)  $\text{COR}_8$ , or

(5)  $\text{CO}_2\text{R}_8$ ;

(6)  $\text{CONR}_7\text{R}_8$ ;

$\text{X}$  is selected from the group consisting of

(1) a covalent bond, and

25 (2) methylene or 1-ethylene or 2-ethylene;

Y-Z considered together are 2 adjoining atoms of the ring

30



said ring being phenyl.

4. A compound according to Claim 3 wherein:

- 176 -

1 + m is equal to 2 or 3;

R1 is selected from a group consisting of:

C1, C2, C3, C4, C5 or C6 linear or branched alkyl, di or tri substituted, the substitutents independently selected from:

5

(a) hydroxy,

(b) Cl or F,

(c) phenyl or mono, di or trisubstituted phenyl, the substitutents independently selected from

10

(1) phenyl,

(2) hydroxy,

(3) methyl or ethyl,

(4) cyano,

(5) halogen,

15

(6) trifluoromethyl,

(d) -NR6COR7, wherein R6 is methyl and R7 is phenyl, pyridinyl or thiophene, phenylC1-3alkyl, pyridinylC1-3alkyl or thiophenelC1-3alkyl, wherein the phenyl, pyridinyl or thiophene, phenylC1-3alkyl, pyridinylC1-

20

3alkyl or thiophenelC1-3alkyl, is optionally substituted with Cl, F, CF3 or C1-3alkyl,

W is selected from the group consisting of

(1) a covalent bond, and

(2) C1-3 alkyl, unsubstituted or substituted with oxo, and

25

Q is NR2;

R2 is selected from a group consisting of:

(1) hydrogen,

(2) C1, C2, C3 or C4 linear or branched

alkyl, unsubstituted, monosubstituted or multiply substituted with oxo,

30

OR6, NR6R7 and phenyl

(3) SO2R8,

(4) COR8, or

(5) CO2R8;

(6) CONR7R8;

- 177 -

X is selected from the group consisting of

- (1) a covalent bond, and
- (2) methylene or 1-ethylene or 2-ethylene;

Y-Z considered together are 2 adjoining atoms of the ring

5



said ring being phenyl.

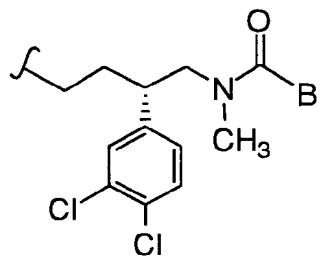
10

5. A according to Claim 4 wherein:

l + m is 3;

R1 is

15



20

where B is

- (a) phenyl or mono di or trisubstituted phenyl wherein the substitutents are independently chloro, methyl, phenyl or CF3;
- (b) -CH2phenyl or mono or disubstituted -CH2phenyl wherein the substitutents are independently chloro, methyl, phenyl or CF3;
- (c) pyridyl or mono di or trisubstituted pyridyl wherein the substitutents are independently chloro, methyl, phenyl or CF3; and
- (d) thiophene or mono or disubstituted thiophene wherein the substitutents are independently chloro, methyl, phenyl or CF3.

30

6. A according to Claim 5 wherein:

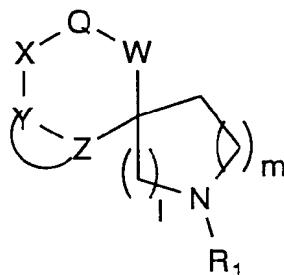
- 178 -

where  $B$  is

(a) phenyl or mono di or trisubstituted phenyl wherein the substitutents are independently chloro, methyl, phenyl or  $\text{CF}_3$ .

5

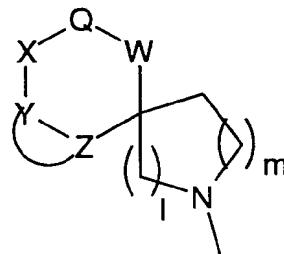
7. A of formula I according to Claim 1



10

15

wherein the group

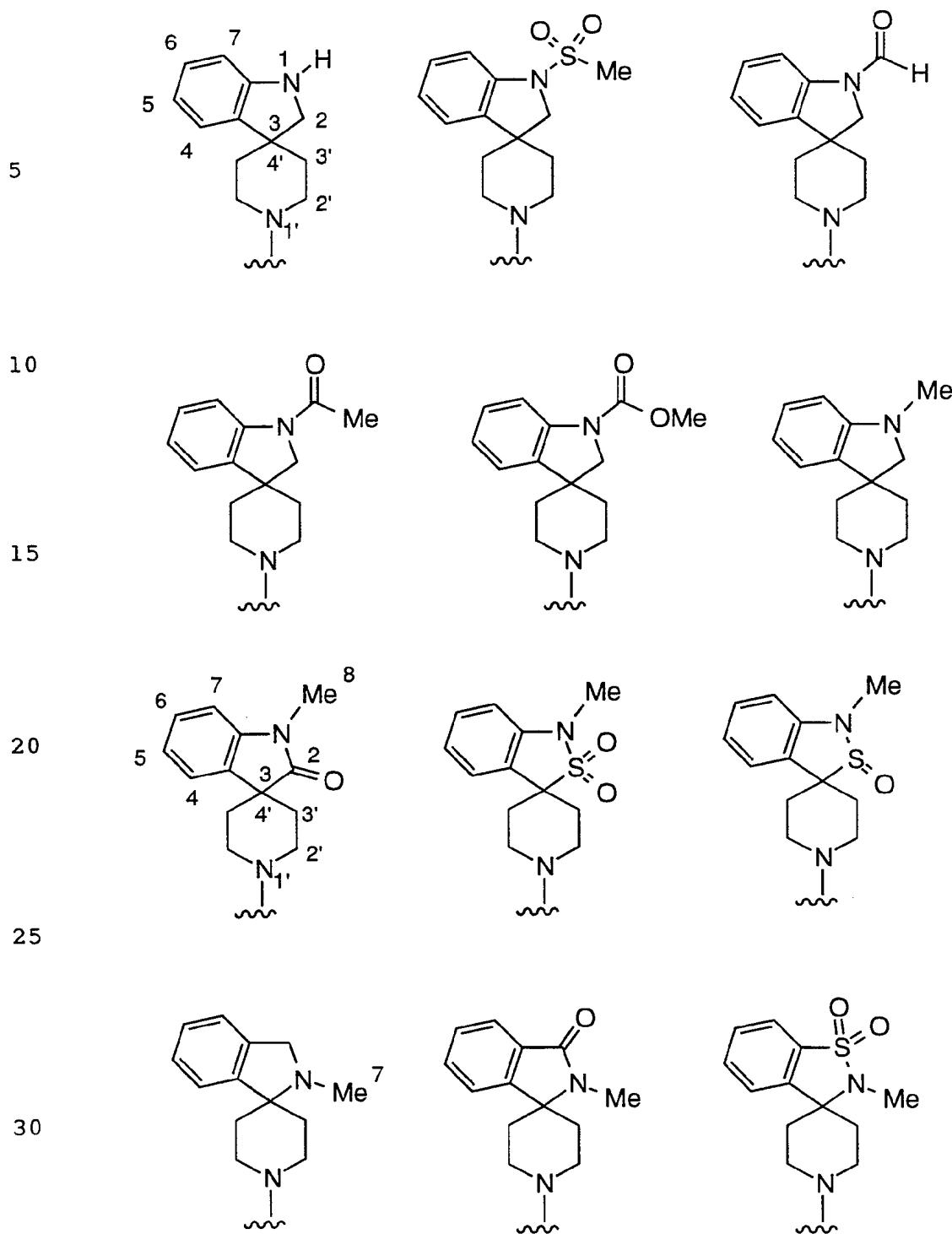


is an optionally mono di or trisubstituted group selected from

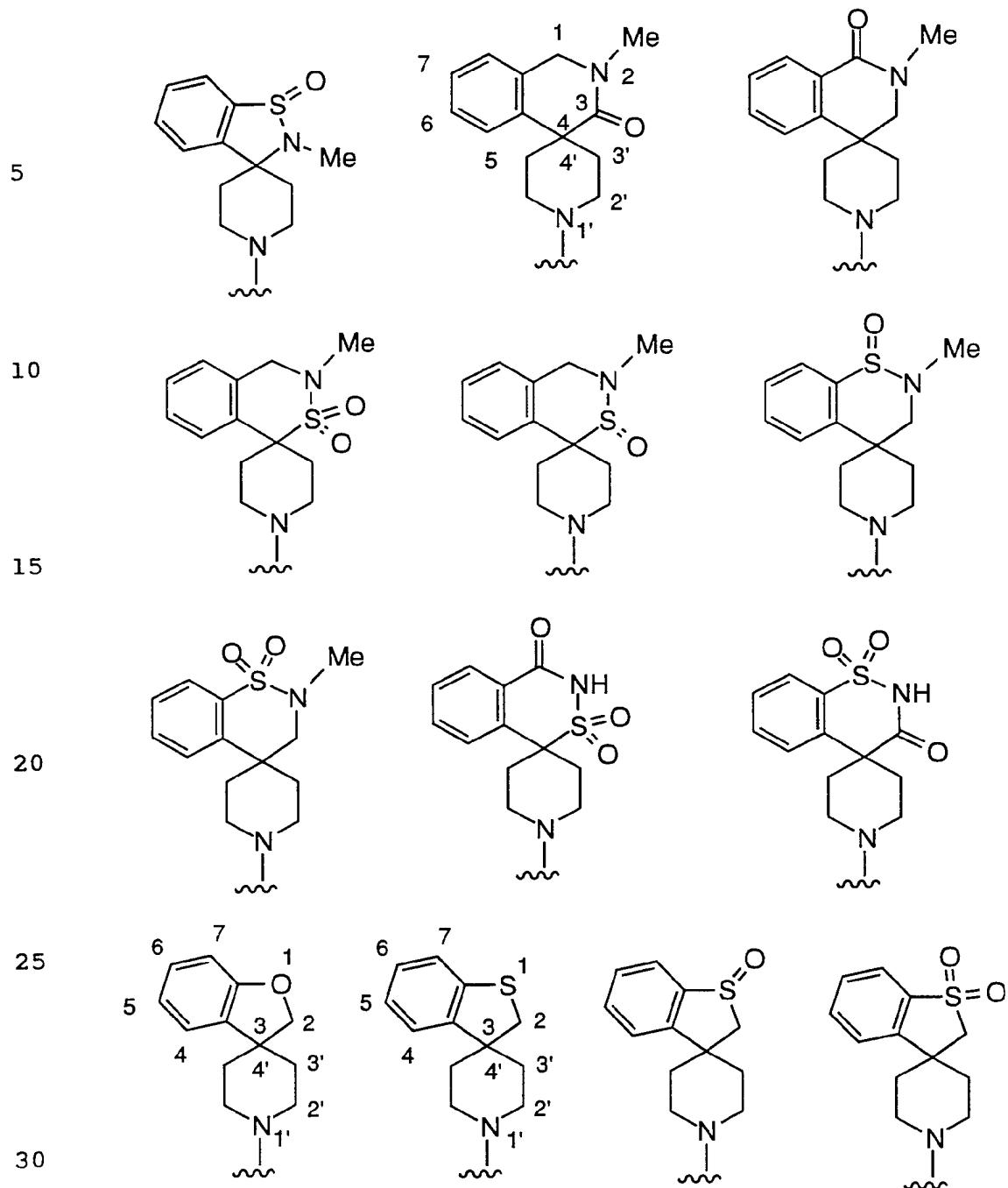
25

30

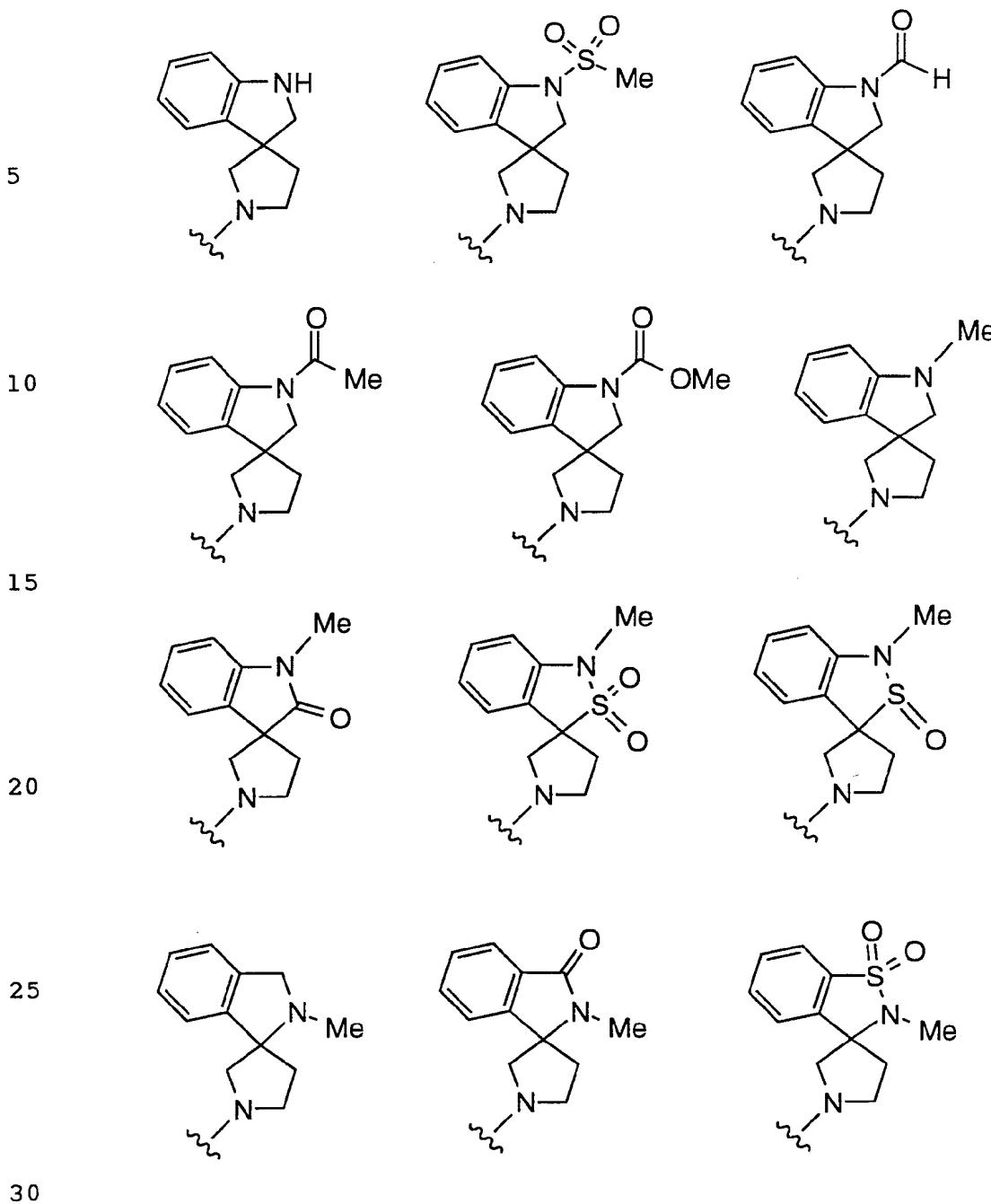
- 179 -



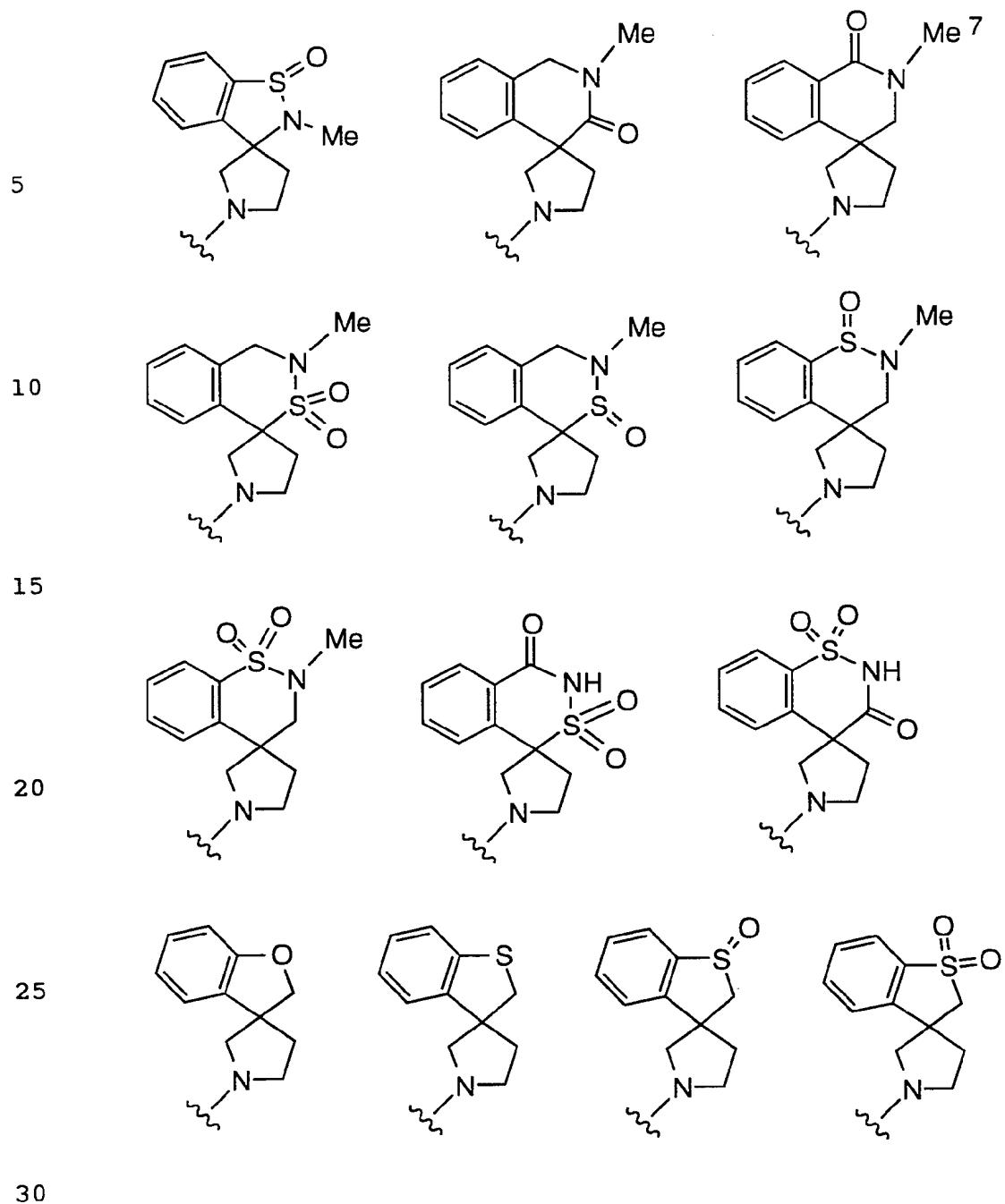
- 180 -



- 181 -

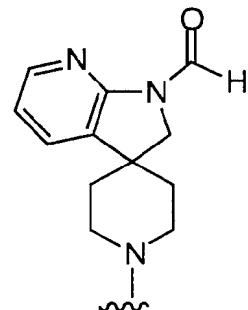
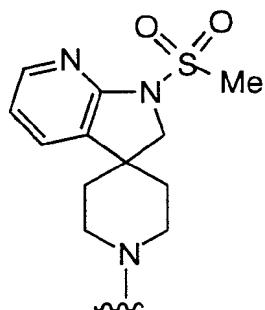
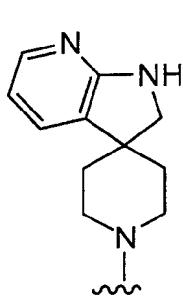


- 182 -

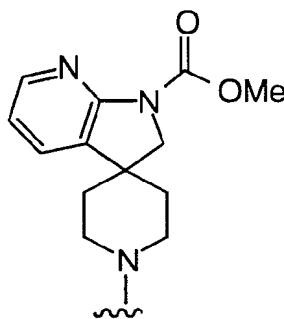
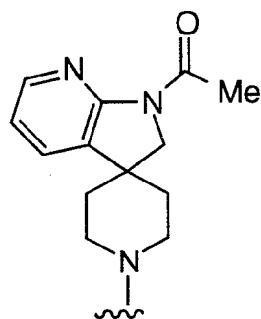


- 183 -

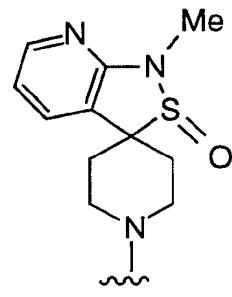
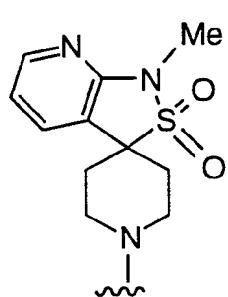
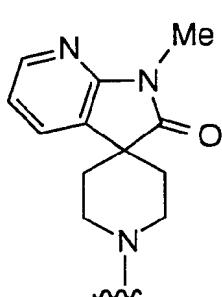
5



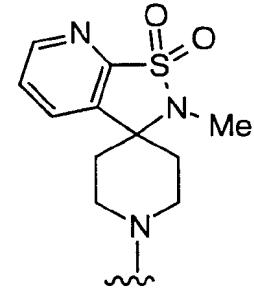
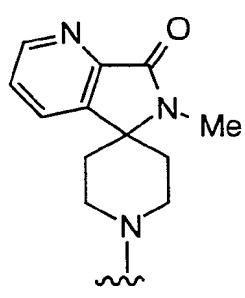
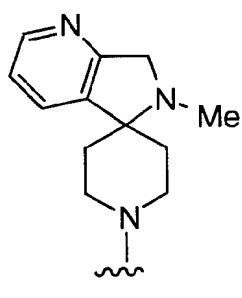
10



15



20

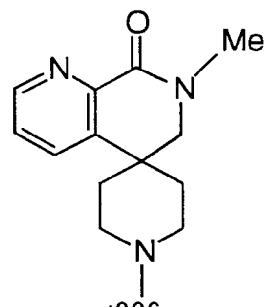
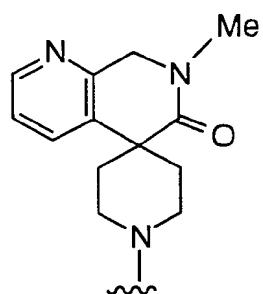
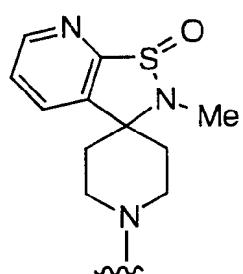


25

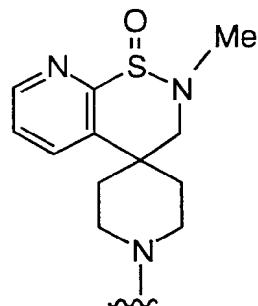
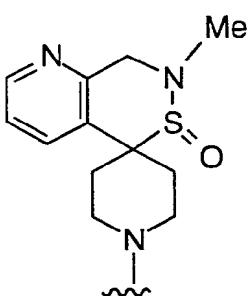
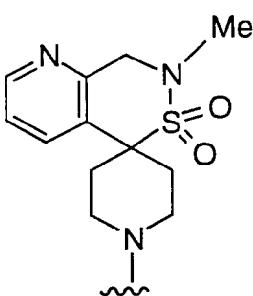
30

- 184 -

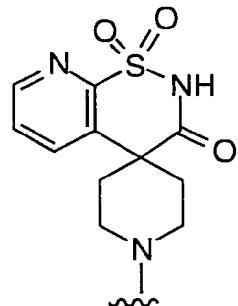
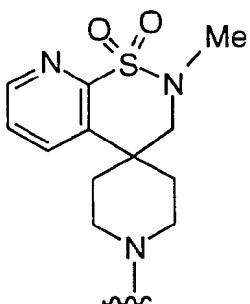
5



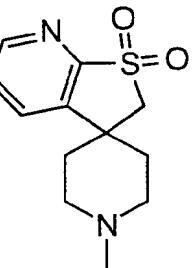
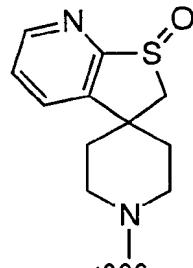
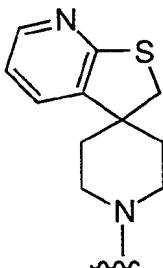
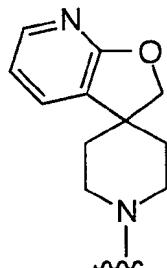
15



20

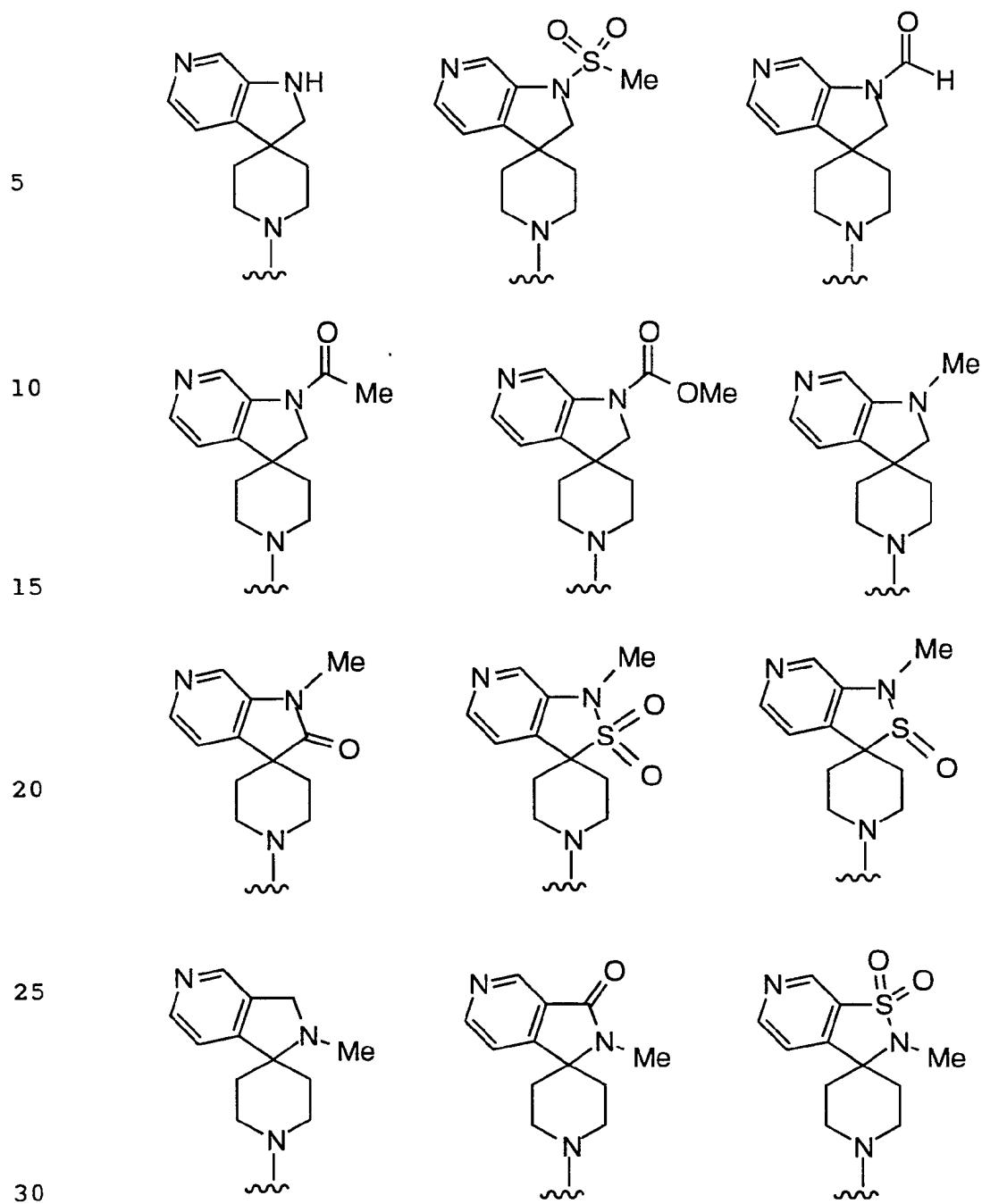


25

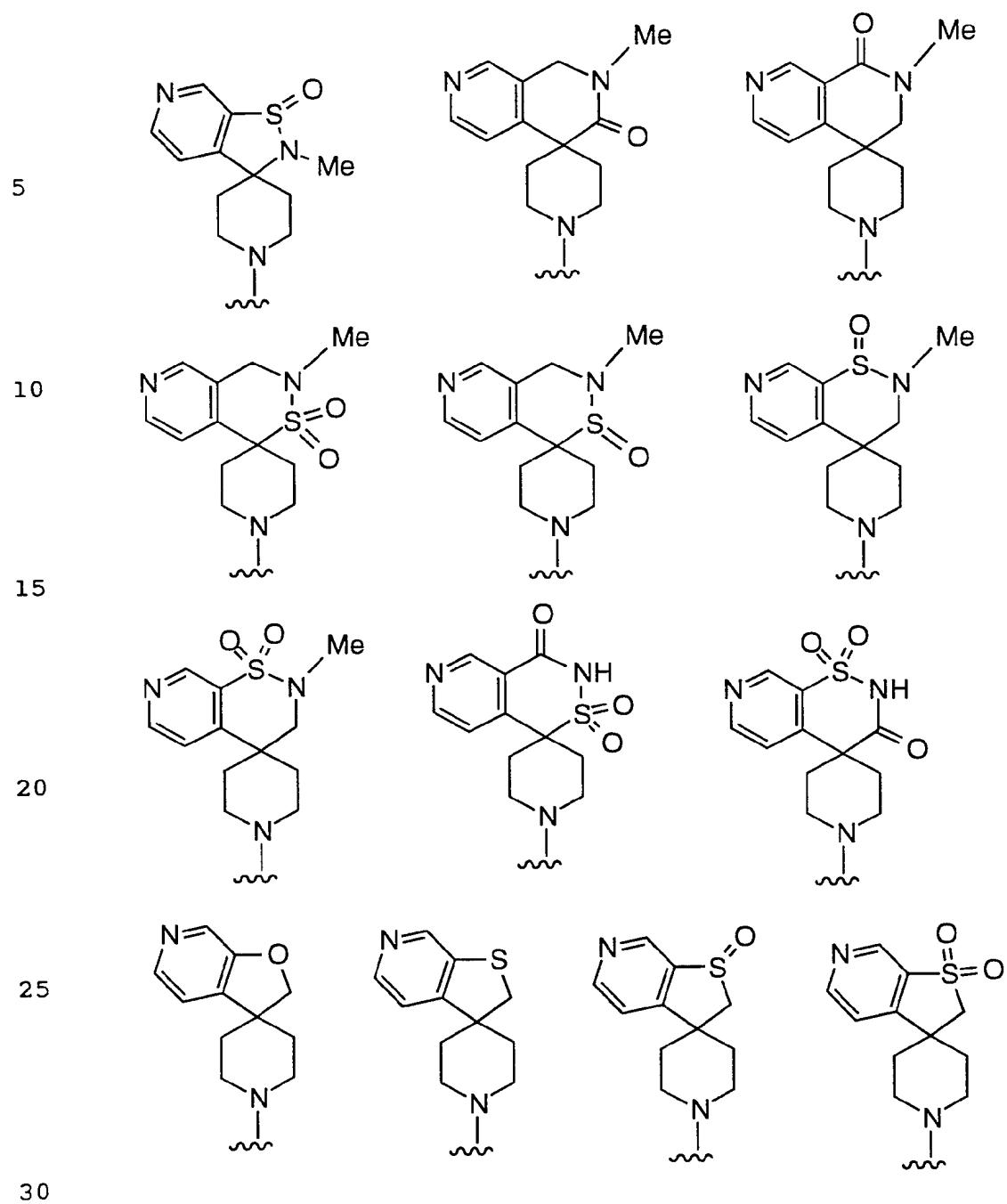


30

- 185 -

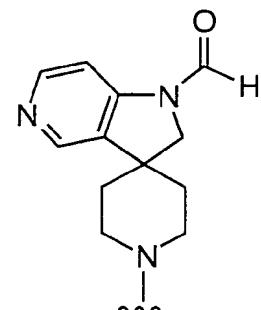
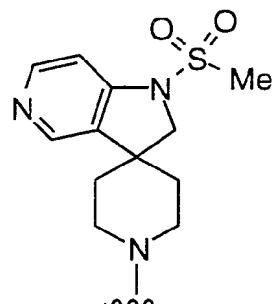
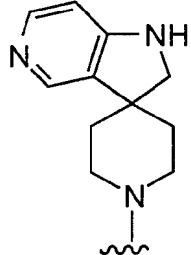


- 186 -

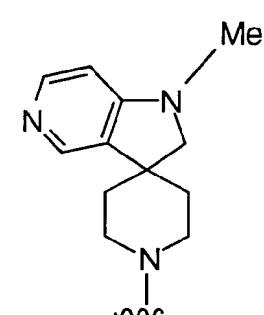
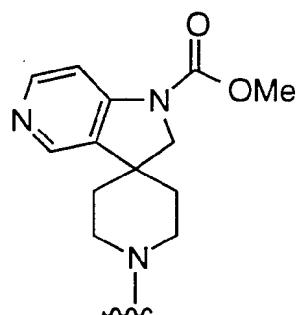
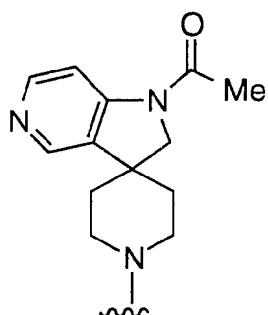


- 187 -

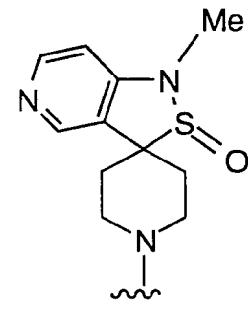
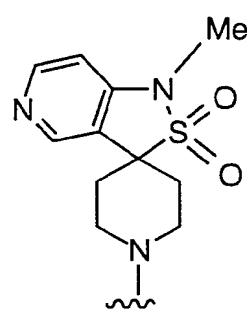
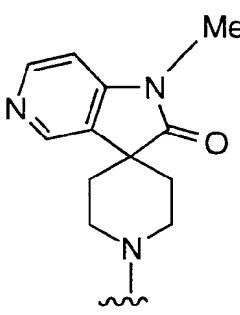
5



10

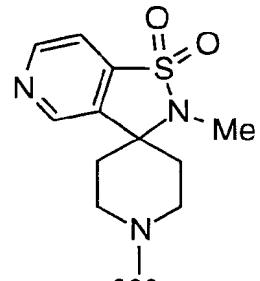
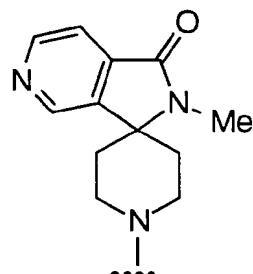
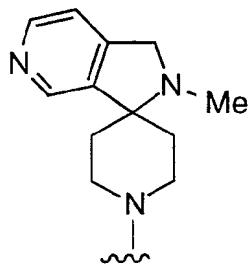


15



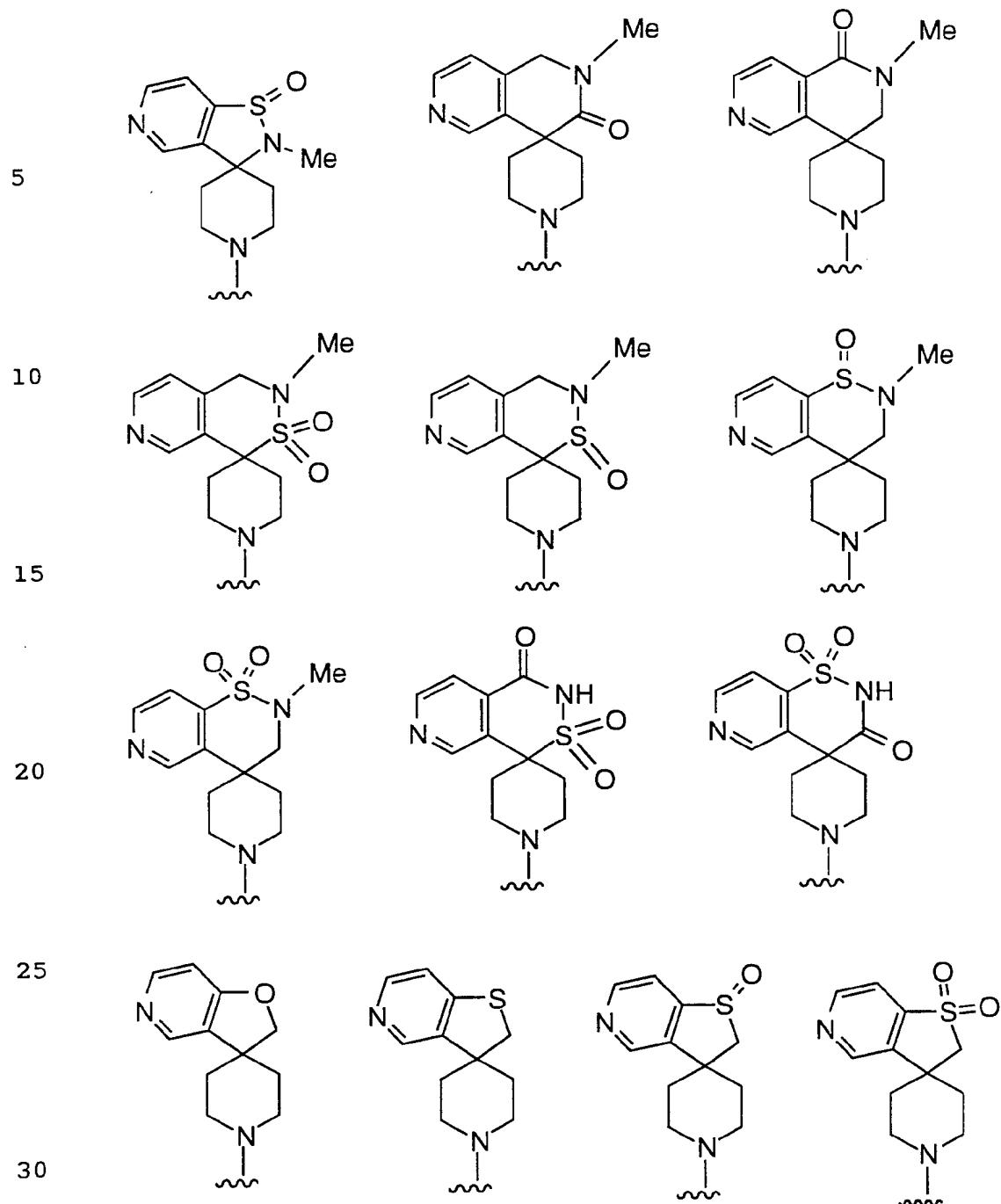
20

25

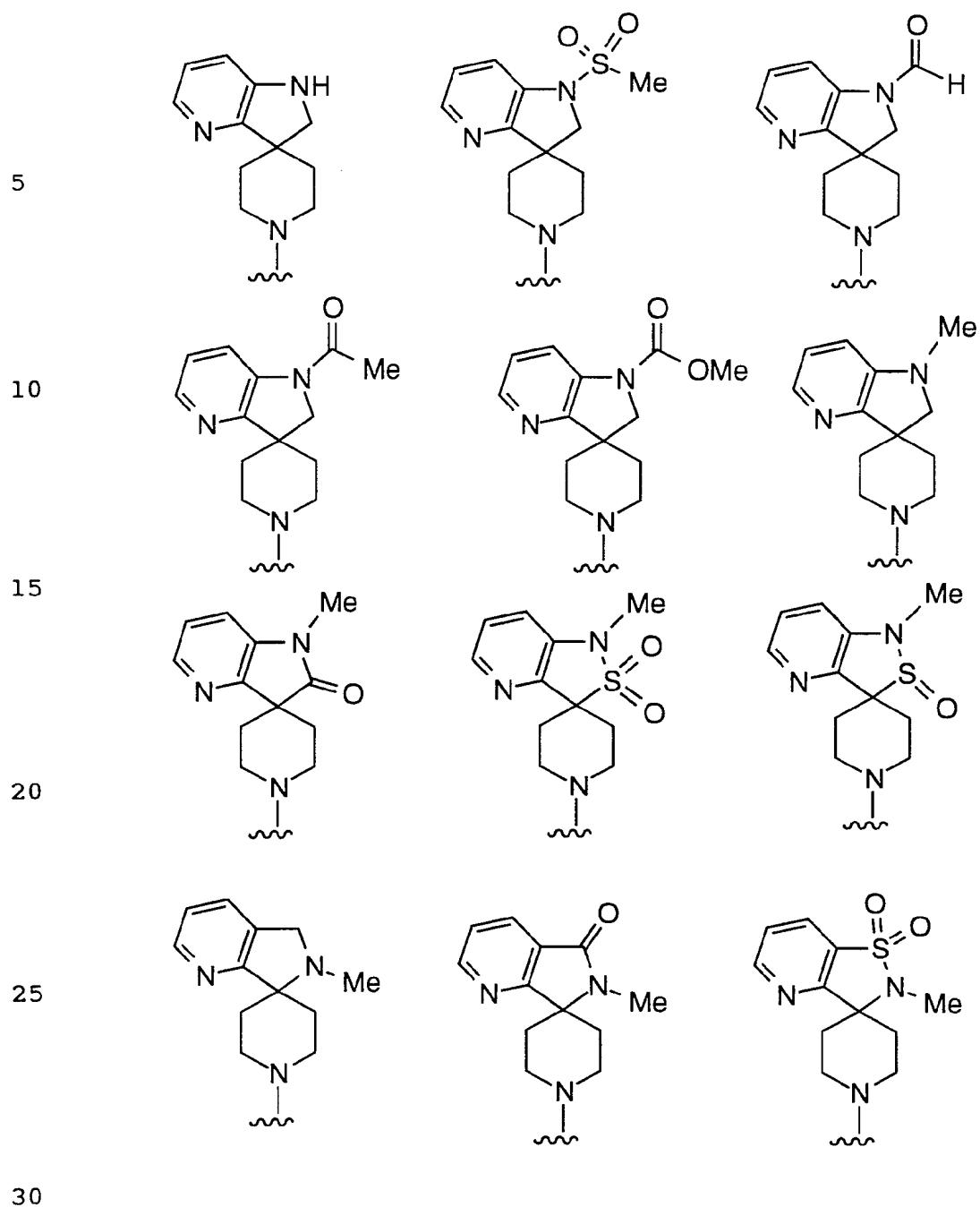


30

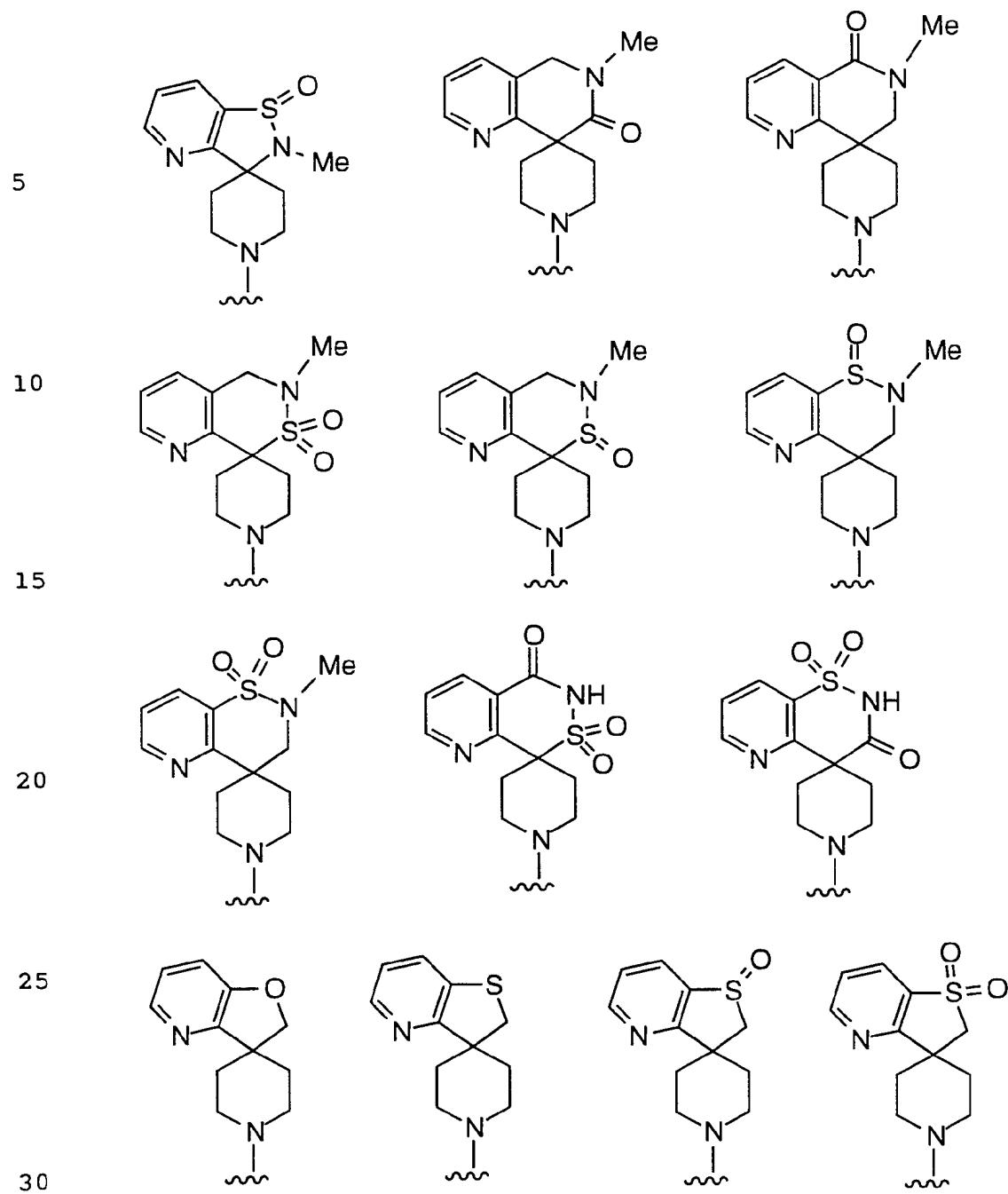
- 188 -



- 189 -

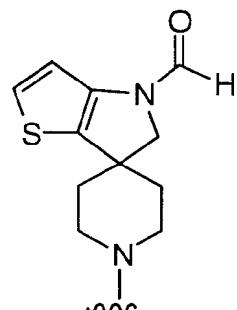
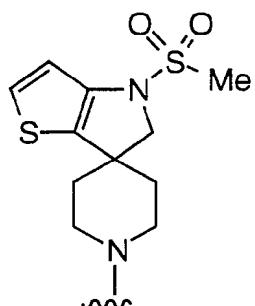
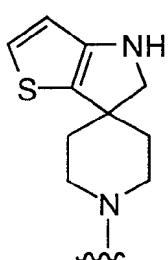


- 190 -

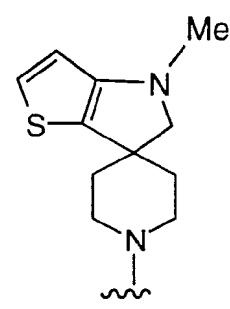
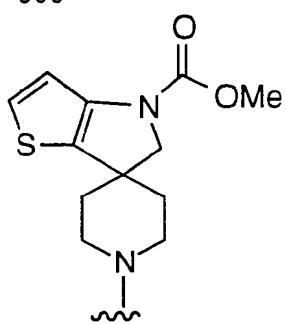
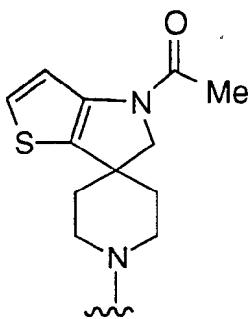


- 191 -

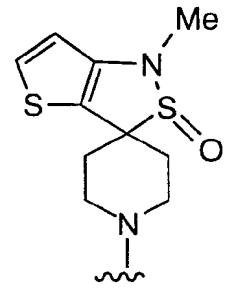
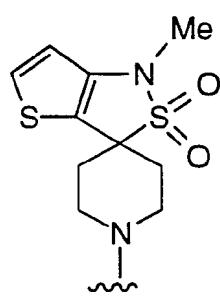
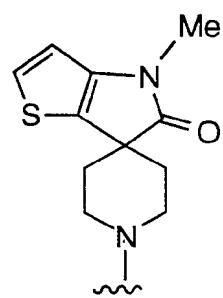
5



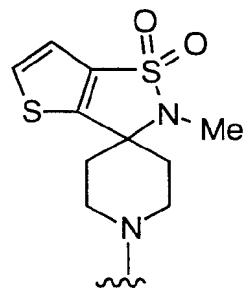
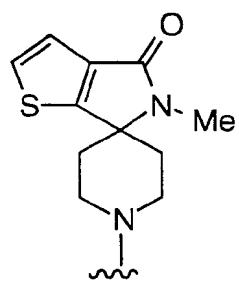
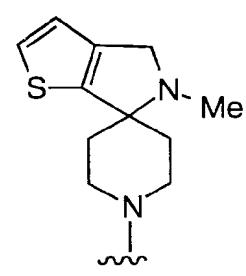
10



15



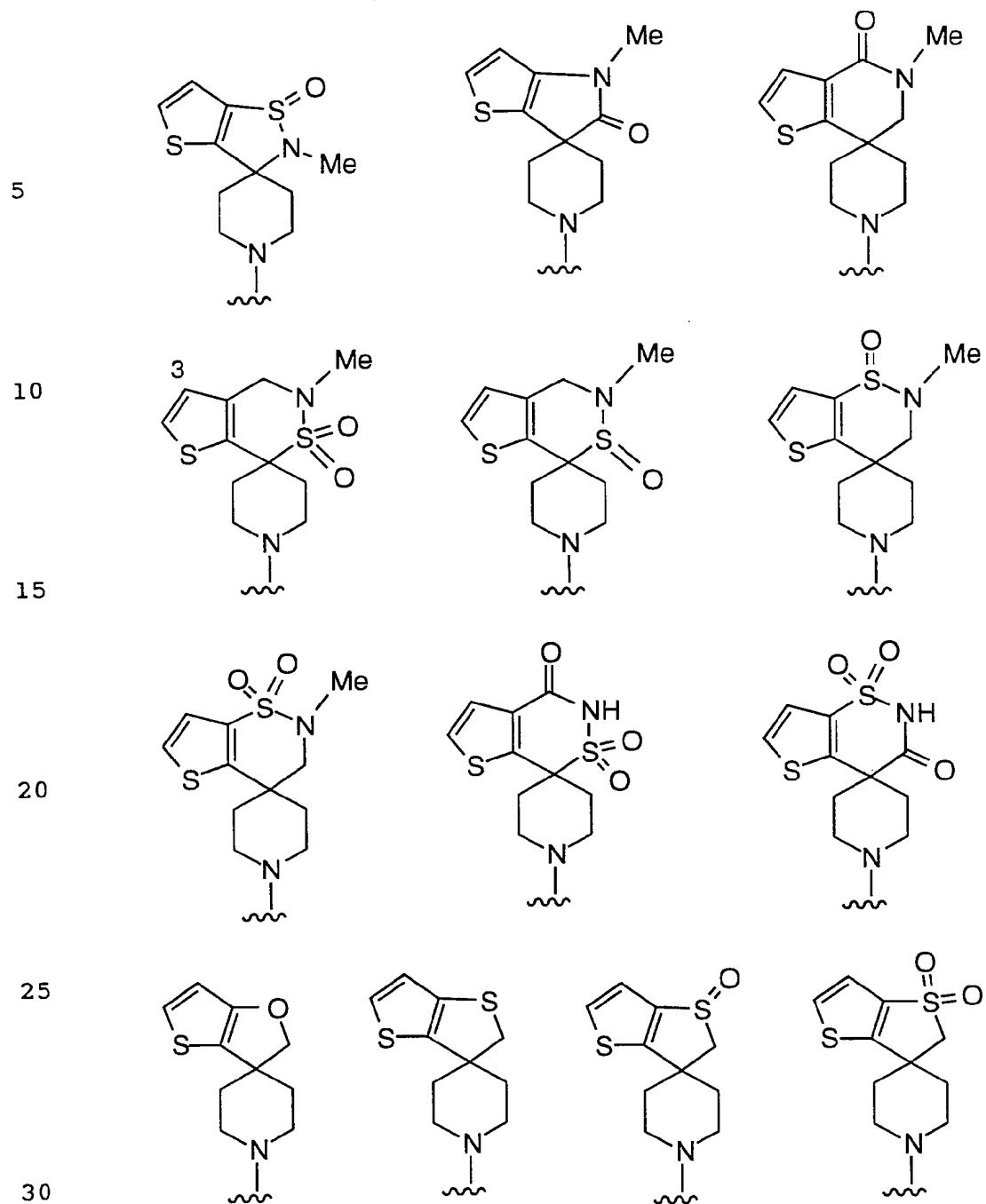
20



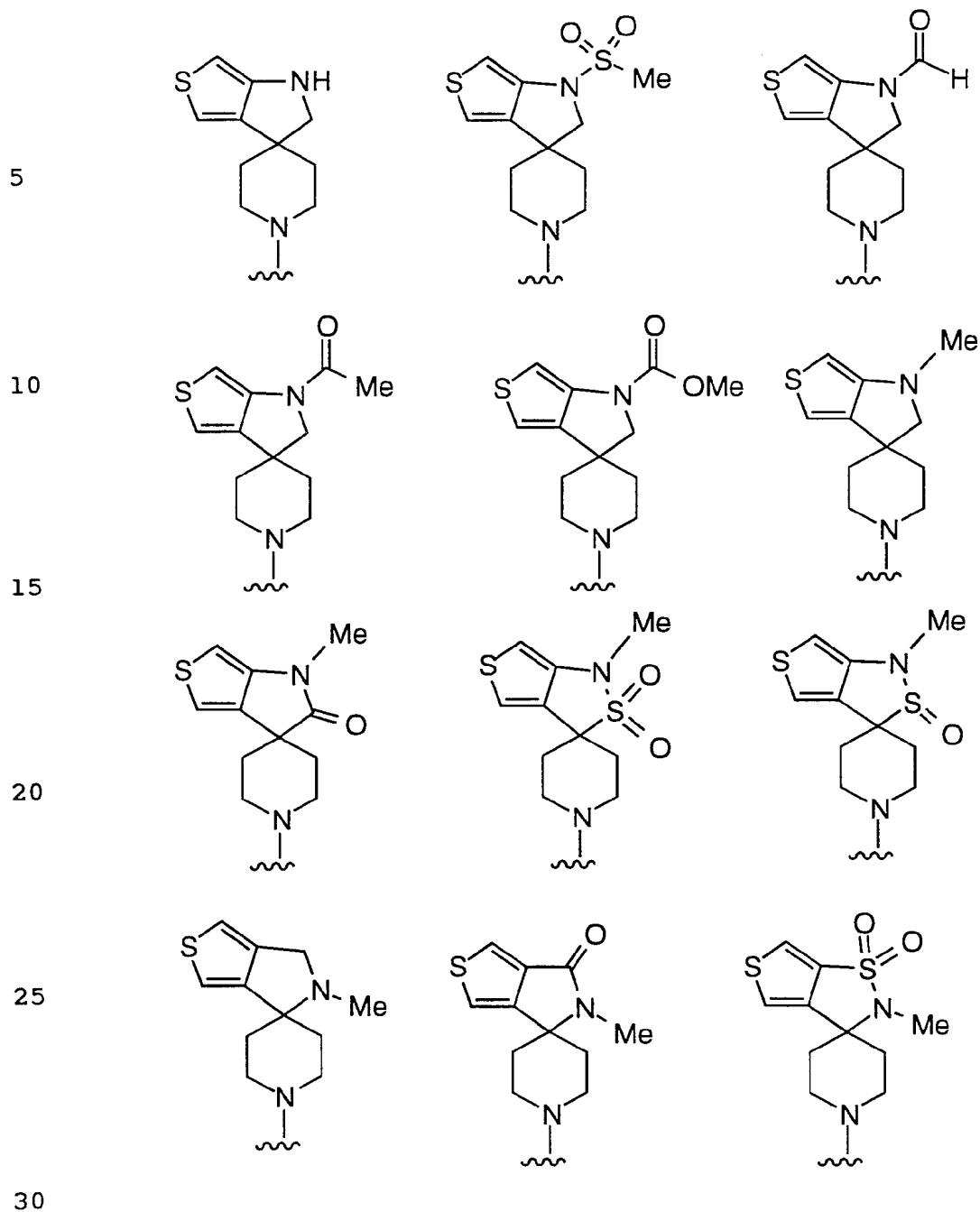
25

30

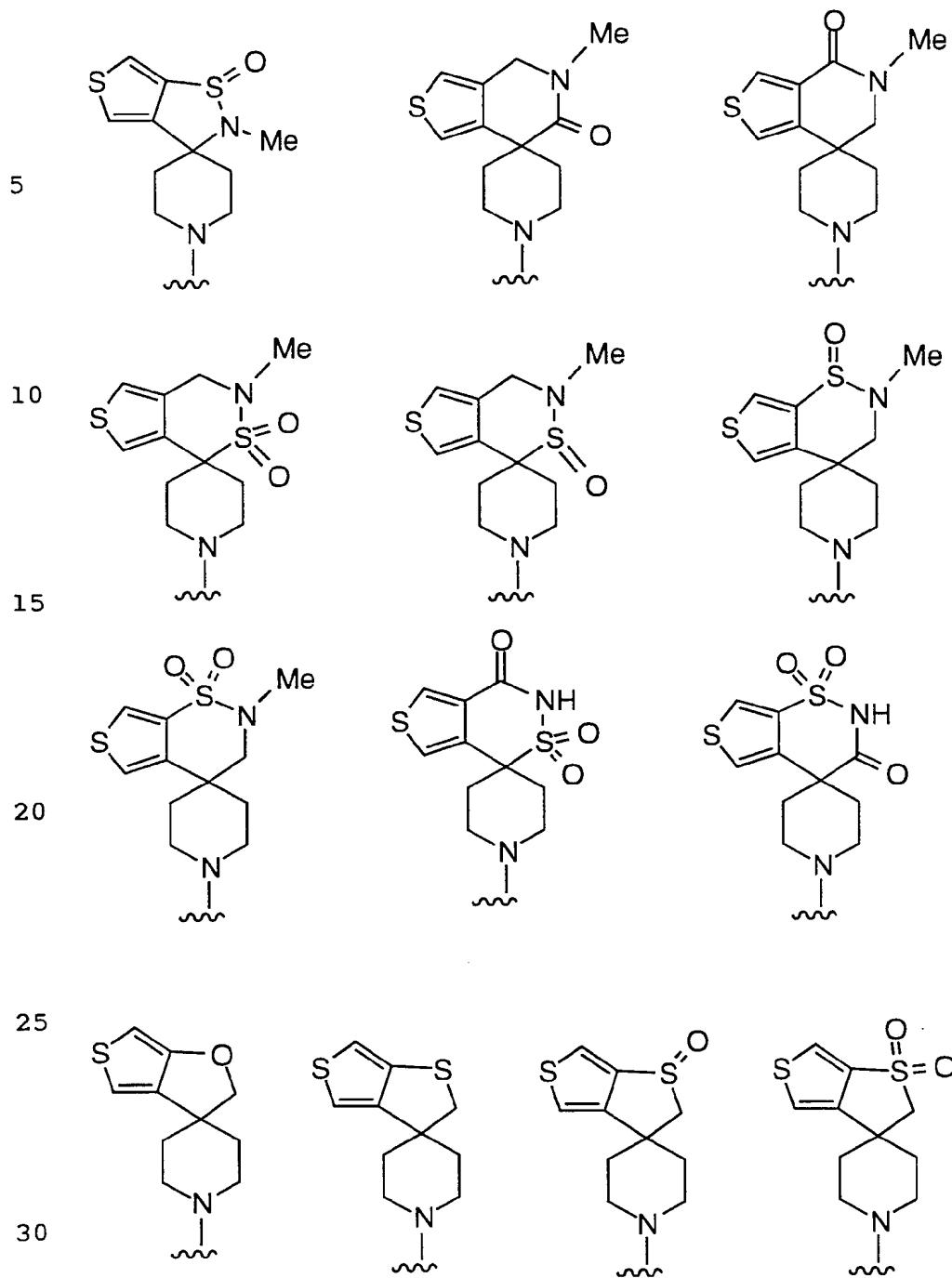
- 192 -



- 193 -

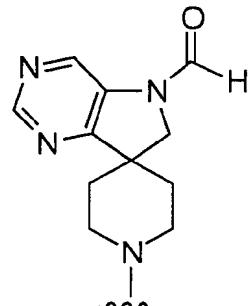
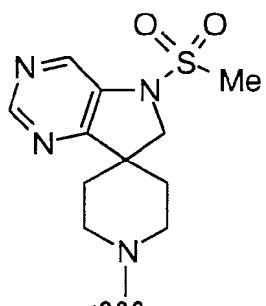
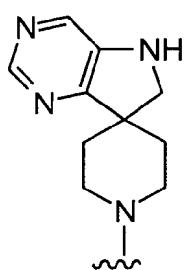


- 194 -

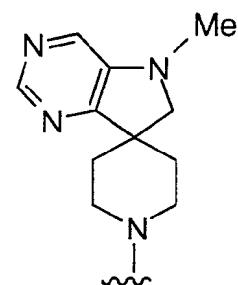
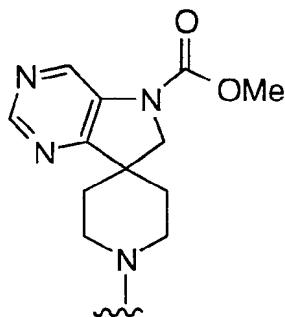
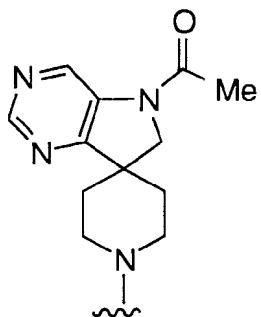


- 195 -

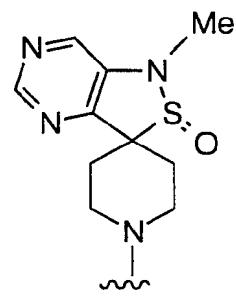
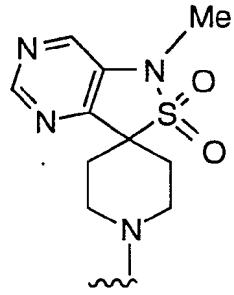
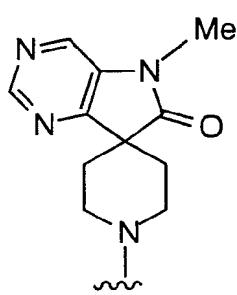
5



10

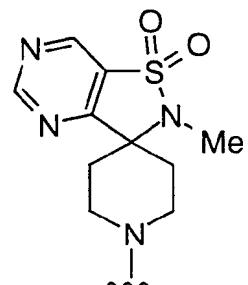
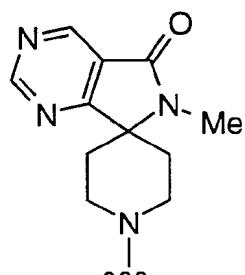
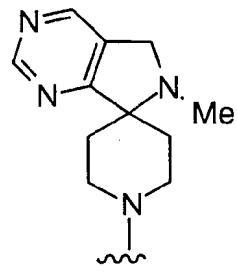


15



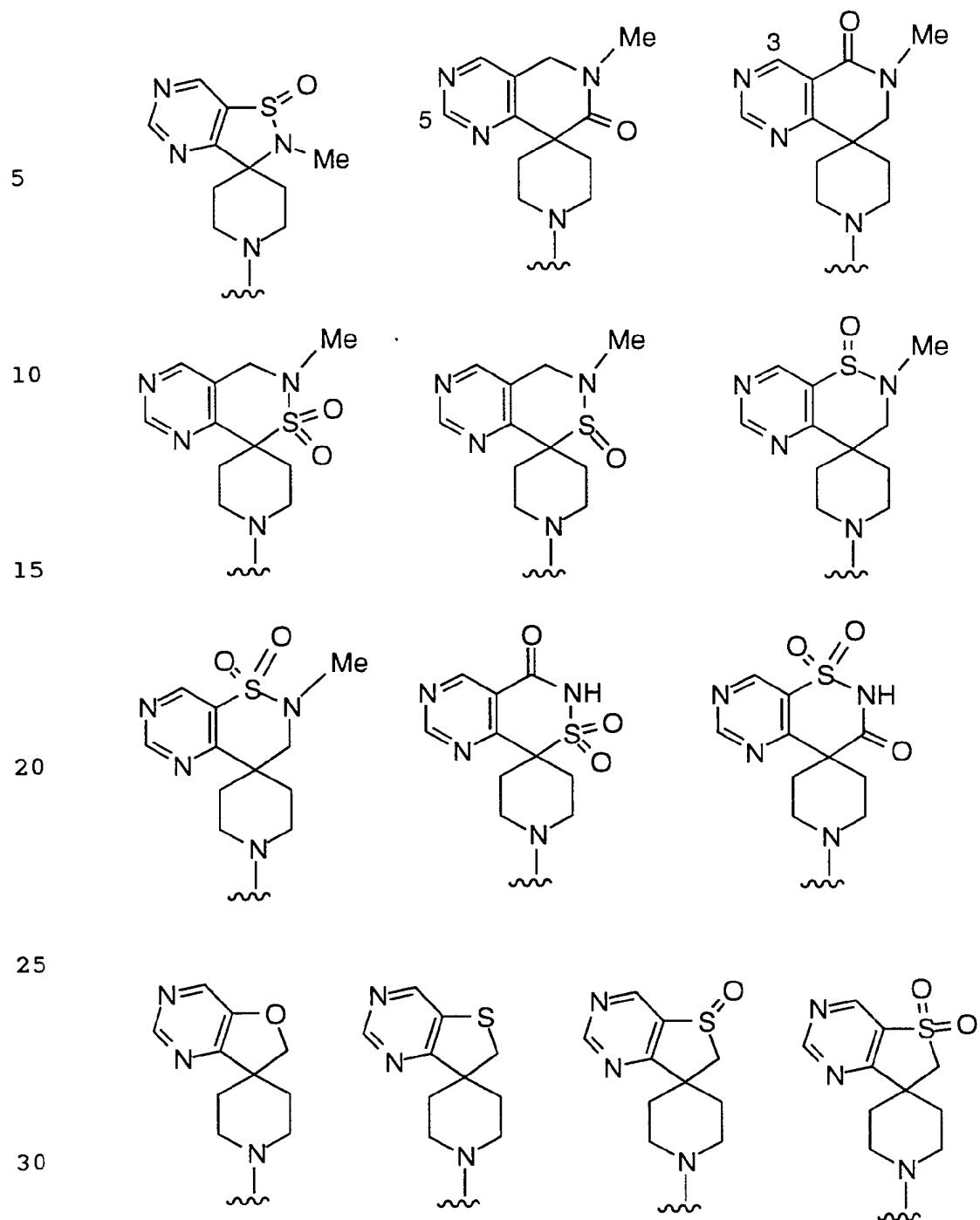
20

25



30

- 196 -



- 197 -

the optional substituents residing at 1, 2, or 3 of the unsubstituted positions on the above groups, the substituents selected from the group consisting of

- 5 (a) hydroxy,
- (b) oxo,
- (c) cyano,
- (d) -NR<sub>6</sub>R<sub>7</sub>,
- (e) -NHCOR<sub>6</sub>R<sub>7</sub>,
- 10 (f) -halogen,
- (g) -CF<sub>3</sub>,
- (h) -phenyl or mono, di or trisubstituted phenyl, the substituents independently selected from
  - (1) hydroxy,
  - (2) oxo,
  - 15 (3) cyano,
  - (4) -NR<sub>6</sub>R<sub>7</sub>,
  - (5) -NHCOR<sub>6</sub>R<sub>7</sub>,
  - (6) -halogen,
  - (7) -CF<sub>3</sub>, and
  - 20 (8) -C<sub>1-3</sub> alkyl.

8. A compound according to Claim 7 wherein:

R<sub>1</sub> is selected from a group consisting of:

- 25 C<sub>1</sub>, C<sub>2</sub>, C<sub>3</sub>, C<sub>4</sub>, C<sub>5</sub>, C<sub>6</sub>, C<sub>7</sub> or C<sub>8</sub> linear or branched alkyl, di, tri or tetra substituted, the substituents independently selected from:
  - (a) hydroxy,
  - (b) Cl or F,
  - (c) trifluoromethyl,
  - (d) phenyl or mono, di or trisubstituted phenyl, the substituents independently selected from
    - 30 (1) phenyl,
    - (2) hydroxy,
    - (3) C<sub>1-3</sub>alkyl,
    - (4) cyano,

- 198 -

(5) halogen,  
(6) trifluoromethyl,  
(7) -NR<sub>6</sub>COR<sub>7</sub>, wherein R<sub>6</sub> and R<sub>7</sub> are independently selected from:  
5 (a) hydrogen,  
(b) C<sub>1</sub>-6 alkyl, or mono or disubstituted C<sub>1</sub>-6 alkyl, the substituents independently selected from  
10 (1) phenyl, unsubstituted or substituted with hydroxy, C<sub>1</sub>-3alkyl, cyano, halogen, trifluoromethyl or C<sub>1</sub>-4alkoxy,  
15 (2) hydroxy,  
(3) oxo,  
(4) cyano,  
(5) halogen,  
(6) trifluoromethyl,  
20 (c) phenyl, pyridinyl or thiophene or mono, di or trisubstituted phenyl, pyridinyl or thiophene, the substituents independently selected from  
(1) hydroxy,  
(2) C<sub>1</sub>-4alkyl,  
(3) cyano,  
(4) halogen,  
25 (5) trifluoromethyl,  
(d) C<sub>1</sub>-3alkyloxy,

or

30 R<sub>6</sub> and R<sub>7</sub> are joined together to form a 5-, 6-, or 7-membered monocyclic saturated ring containing 1 or 2 heteroatoms independently selected from nitrogen, oxygen, and sulfur, and in which the ring is unsubstituted or mono or disubstituted, the substituents independently selected from  
(a) hydroxy,

- 199 -

- (b) oxo,
- (c) cyano,
- (d) halogen,
- (e) trifluoromethyl,

5 (8) -NR<sub>6</sub>CO<sub>2</sub>R<sub>7</sub>,

(9) -NR<sub>6</sub>CONHR<sub>7</sub>,

(10) -NR<sub>6</sub>S(O)<sub>j</sub>R<sub>7</sub>, wherein j is 1 or 2,

(11) -CONR<sub>6</sub>R<sub>7</sub>,

(12) -COR<sub>6</sub>,

10 (13) -CO<sub>2</sub>R<sub>6</sub>,

(14) -OR<sub>6</sub>,

(15) -S(O)<sub>k</sub>R<sub>6</sub>,

(16) heteroaryl, wherein heteroaryl is selected from the group consisting of:

15 (a) pyrazinyl,

(b) pyrazolyl,

(c) pyridyl,

(d) pyrimidyl, and

(e) thienyl,

20 wherein the heteroaryl is unsubstituted or mono di or trisubstituted, the substituents independently selected from,

- (a) hydroxy,
- (b) oxo,
- (c) cyano,
- (d) halogen,
- (e) trifluoromethyl,

25 (e) -NR<sub>6</sub>COR<sub>7</sub>,

(f) -NR<sub>6</sub>CO<sub>2</sub>R<sub>7</sub>,

(g) -NR<sub>6</sub>CONHR<sub>7</sub>,

(h) -NHS(O)<sub>j</sub>R<sub>6</sub>,

(i) -COR<sub>6</sub>,

30 (j) -OR<sub>6</sub>,

- 200 -

(k) heteroaryl, wherein heteroaryl is selected from the group consisting of:

- 5 (1) pyrazinyl,
- (2) pyrazolyl,
- (3) pyridyl,
- (4) pyrimidyl, and
- (5) thienyl,

10 wherein the heteroaryl is unsubstituted or mono di or trisubstituted, the substituents independently selected from

- (a) phenyl,
- (b) hydroxy,
- (c) oxo,
- (d) cyano,
- 15 (e) halogen, and
- (f) trifluoromethyl.

9. A compound according to Claim 8 wherein:

R1 is selected from a group consisting of:

20 C1, C2, C3, C4, C5 or C6 linear or branched alkyl, di or tri substituted, the substituents independently selected from:

25 (a) hydroxy,  
(b) Cl or F,  
(c) phenyl or mono, di or trisubstituted phenyl, the substituents independently selected from

- (1) phenyl,
- (2) hydroxy,
- (3) C1-3alkyl,
- (4) cyano,
- (5) halogen,
- (6) trifluoromethyl,

30 (d) -NR6COR7, wherein R6 is hydrogen or C1-3 alkyl and R7 is phenyl, pyridinyl or thiophene, phenylC1-3alkyl,

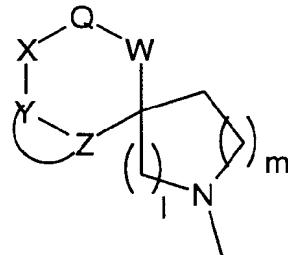
- 201 -

pyridinylC1-3alkyl or thiophenelC1-3alkyl, wherein the phenyl, pyridinyl or thiophene, phenylC1-3alkyl, pyridinylC1-3alkyl or thiophenelC1-3alkyl, is optionally substituted with Cl, F, CF<sub>3</sub> or C1-3alkyl,

5 (e) -NHS(O)<sub>j</sub>R<sub>6</sub>,  
(f) -COR<sub>6</sub>,  
(h) -OR<sub>6</sub>.

10 10. A compound according to Claim 9 wherein  
wherein the group

15



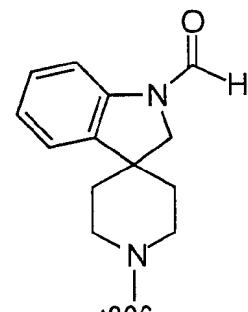
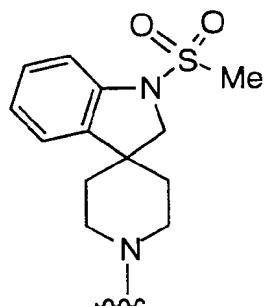
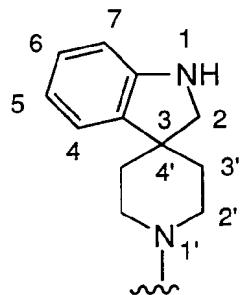
20

25

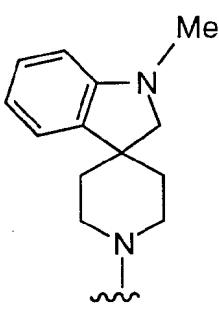
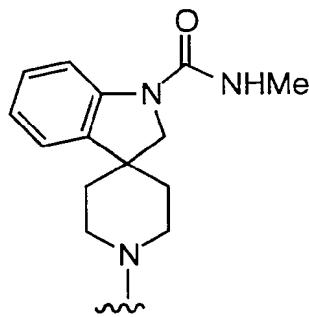
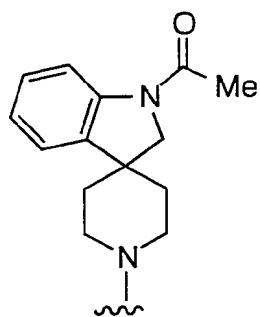
30

- 202 -

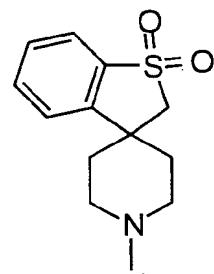
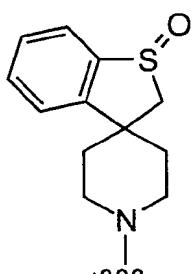
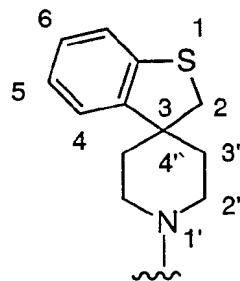
5



15



20



25

the substituents residing at 1, 2, or 3 of the positions 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6 or 7 of the above groups, the substituents selected from the group consisting of

30

- 203 -

- (a) hydroxy,
- (b) oxo,
- (c) cyano,
- (d) -NHR<sub>6</sub>,
- 5 (e) -NR<sub>6</sub>R<sub>7</sub>,
- (f) -NHCOR<sub>6</sub>R<sub>7</sub>,
- (g) -halogen,
- (h) -CF<sub>3</sub>,
- (i) -phenyl or mono, di or trisubstituted phenyl, the
- 10 substituents independently selected from
  - (1) hydroxy,
  - (2) oxo,
  - (3) cyano,
  - (4) -NHR<sub>6</sub>,
  - (5) -NR<sub>6</sub>R<sub>7</sub>,
  - (6) -NHCOR<sub>6</sub>R<sub>7</sub>,
  - (7) -halogen,
  - (8) -CF<sub>3</sub>, and
  - (9) -C<sub>1-3</sub> alkyl.
- 15 20 11. A compound according to Claim 10 wherein:

R<sub>1</sub> is selected from a group consisting of:

- C<sub>2</sub>, C<sub>3</sub>, C<sub>4</sub> or C<sub>5</sub> linear or branched alkyl, di or tri substituted, the substituents independently selected from:
  - (a) hydroxy,
  - (b) Cl or F,
  - (c) phenyl or mono, di or trisubstituted phenyl, the substituents independently selected from
    - (1) phenyl,
    - (2) hydroxy,
    - (3) methyl or ethyl,
    - (4) cyano,
    - (5) halogen,
    - (6) trifluoromethyl,

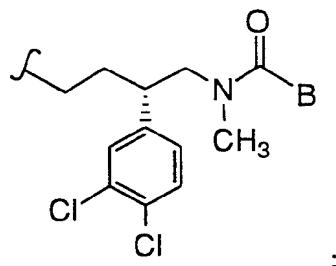
- 204 -

5 (d) -NR<sub>6</sub>COR<sub>7</sub>, wherein R<sub>6</sub> is methyl and R<sub>7</sub> is phenyl, pyridinyl or thiophene, phenylC<sub>1</sub>-3alkyl, pyridinylC<sub>1</sub>-3alkyl or thiophenelC<sub>1</sub>-3alkyl, wherein the phenyl, pyridinyl or thiophene, phenylC<sub>1</sub>-3alkyl, pyridinylC<sub>1</sub>-3alkyl or thiophenelC<sub>1</sub>-3alkyl, is optionally substituted with Cl, F, CF<sub>3</sub> or C<sub>1</sub>-3alkyl.

12. A according to Claim 11 wherein:

10 R<sub>1</sub> is

15



where B is

20 (a) phenyl or mono di or trisubstituted phenyl wherein the substitutents are independently chloro, methyl, phenyl or CF<sub>3</sub>;

(b) -CH<sub>2</sub>phenyl or mono or disubstituted -CH<sub>2</sub>phenyl wherein the substitutents are independently chloro, methyl, phenyl or CF<sub>3</sub>;

25 (c) pyridyl or mono di or trisubstituted pyridyl wherein the substitutents are independently chloro, methyl, phenyl or CF<sub>3</sub>; or

(d) thiophene or mono or disubstituted thiophene wherein the substitutents are independently chloro, methyl, phenyl or CF<sub>3</sub>.

30

13. A compound according to Claim 12 wherein B is phenyl or mono di or trisubstituted phenyl wherein the substitutents are independently chloro, methyl, phenyl or CF<sub>3</sub>.

- 205 -

14. A compound according to Claim 1 selected from the group consisting of

- (a) 1'-(3-(S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl)-4-(N-t-butoxycarbonyl)(methylamino)butyl)-1-methanesulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine);
- 5 (b) 1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3,5-dimethylbenzoyl)(methylamino)butyl)-1-methanesulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine);
- (c) 1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-
- 10 (benzoyl)(methyl-amino)butyl)-1-methanesulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine);
- (d) 1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3,5-bistrifluoro-methylbenzoyl)(methylamino)butyl)-1-methanesulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine);
- 15 (e) 1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3-methylbenzoyl)(methylamino)butyl)-1-methanesulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine);
- (f) 1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3-chlorobenzoyl)(methylamino)butyl)-1-methanesulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine);
- 20 (g) 1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3-trifluoromethyl-benzoyl)(methylamino)butyl)-1-methanesulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine);
- (h) 1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3,5-dichlorobenzoyl)(methylamino)butyl)-1-methanesulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine);
- 25 (i) 1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3-trifluoromethyl-phenylacetyl)(methylamino)butyl)-1-methanesulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine);
- (j) 1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3-isopropoxy-phenylacetyl)(methylamino)butyl)-1-methanesulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine);

- 206 -

(k) 1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(benzenesulfonyl)(methylamino))butyl)-1-methanesulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine);

5 (l) 1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3,5-dimethylbenzoyl)(methylamino))butyl)-1-benzyloxycarbonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine);

(m) 1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3,5-dimethylbenzoyl)(methylamino))butyl)-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine);

10 (n) 1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3,5-dimethylbenzoyl)(methylamino))butyl)-1-propionyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine);

(o) 1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3,5-dimethylbenzoyl)(methylamino)) butyl)-1-formyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine);

15 (p) 1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3,5-dimethylbenzoyl)(methylamino))butyl)-1-t-butylcarbonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine);

(q) 1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3,5-dimethylbenzoyl)(methylamino))butyl)-1-methylaminocarbonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine);

20 (r) 1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3,5-dimethylbenzoyl)(methylamino))butyl)-1-ethoxycarbonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine);

(s) 1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3,5-dimethylbenzoyl)(methylamino))butyl)-1-ethanesulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine);

25 (t) 1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3,5-dimethylbenzoyl)(methylamino))butyl)-1-i-propanesulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine);

(u) 1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3,5-dimethylbenzoyl)(methylamino))butyl)-1'-methyl-1-methanesulfonyl-spiro-indoline-3,4'-piperidinium iodide;

(v) 1'-(3-(S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl)-4-(N-(R or S)-(3-methylbenzoyl)(methylamino))pentyl)-1-methanesulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine);

5 (w) 1'-(3-(S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl)-4-(N-(R or S)-(3,5-bis(trifluoromethyl)benzoyl)(methylamino))pentyl)-1-methanesulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine);

(x) 1'-(3-(S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl)-4-(N-(R or S)-(3,5-dimethylbenzoyl)(methylamino))pentyl)-1-methanesulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine);

10 (y) 1'-(3-(S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl)-4-(N-(R or S)-(3,5-dichlorobenzoyl)(methylamino))pentyl)-1-methanesulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine);

xs (aa) 1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3,5-difluorobenzoyl)(methylamino))butyl)-1-methanesulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine);

15 (ab) 1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3-fluoro-5-(trifluoromethyl)benzoyl)(methylamino))butyl)-1-methanesulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine);

(ac) 1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(1-naphthoyl)(methylamino))butyl)-1-methanesulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine);

20 (ad) 1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(2-chlorophenylsulfonyl)-(methylamino))butyl)-1-methylsulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine);

25 (ae) 1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3-chlorophenylsulfonyl)-(methylamino))butyl)-1-methylsulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine);

(af) 1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(4-chlorophenylsulfonyl)-(methylamino))butyl)-1-methylsulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine);

30 (ag) 1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3,5-dichlorophenylsulfonyl)-(methylamino))butyl)-1-methylsulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine);

- 208 -

(ah) 1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3-fluoro-5-(trifluoromethyl)benzoyl)(methylamino))butyl)-1-acetyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine);

5 (ai) 1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3,5-dimethylbenzoyl)(methylamino))butyl)-1-acetyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine);

(aj) 1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3-bromo-5-methylbenzoyl)(methylamino))butyl)-1-methanesulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine);

10 (ak) 1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-Dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3,5-dimethylbenzoyl)(methylamino))butyl)-1-(2-aminoacetyl)-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine);

(al) 1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3,5-dimethylbenzoyl)(methylamino))butyl)-1-methyl-spiro(indol-2-one-3,4'-piperidine);

15 (am) 1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3,5-dichlorobenzoyl)(methylamino))butyl)-1-methyl-spiro(isoindol-1-one-3,4'-piperidine);

(an) 1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3,5-dimethylbenzoyl)(methylamino))butyl)-spiro(2-oxo-tetrahydroquinoline-4,4'-piperidine); and

20 (ao) 1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3,5-dichlorobenzoyl)(methylamino))butyl)-1-methyl-spiro(2-oxo-tetrahydroquinoline-4,4'-piperidine).

25

15. A compound according to Claim 1 selected from

(a) 1'-(3-(S)-(4-fluorophenyl)-4-(N-(3,5-bistrifluoromethylbenzoyl)(methylamino))butyl)-1-acetyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine),

30 (b) 1'-(3-(S)-(3-chlorophenyl)-4-(N-(3,5-bistrifluoromethylbenzoyl)(methylamino))butyl)-1-acetyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine),

- (c) 1'-(3-(S)-(4-chlorophenyl)-4-(N-(3,5-bistrifluoromethylbenzoyl)(methylamino))butyl)-1-acetyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine),
- 5 (d) 1'-(3-(S)-(3,4-difluorophenyl)-4-(N-(3,5-bistrifluoromethylbenzoyl)(methylamino))butyl)-1-acetyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine),
- (e) 1'-(3-(S)-(3,4-methylenedioxyphenyl)-4-(N-(3,5-bistrifluoromethylbenzoyl)(methylamino))butyl)-1-methanesulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine),
- 10 (f) 1'-(3-(RS)-(3,5-dichlorophenyl)-4-(N-(3,5-bistrifluoromethylbenzoyl)(methylamino))butyl)-1-methanesulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine),
- (g) 1'-(3-(S)-(4-chlorophenyl)-4-(N-(3,5-bistrifluoromethylbenzoyl)(methylamino))butyl)-spiro(2,3-dihydrobenzothiophene-3,4'-piperidine),
- 15 (h) 1'-(3-(RS)-(4-pyridyl)-4-(N-(3,5-bistrifluoromethylbenzoyl)(methylamino))butyl)-1-acetyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine),
- (i) 1'-(3-(S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl)-4-(N-(3,5-dimethylbenzoyl)(ethylamino))butyl)-1-methanesulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine),
- 20 (j) 1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3,5-dichlorobenzoyl)(methylamino))butyl)-5-fluoro-spiro(2,3-dihydrobenzofuran-3,4'-piperidine),
- 25 (k) 1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3-chlorobenzoyl)(methylamino))butyl)-5-fluoro-spiro(2,3-dihydrobenzofuran-3,4'-piperidine),
- (l) 1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3,5-dimethylbenzoyl)(methylamino))butyl)-5-fluoro-spiro(2,3-dihydrobenzofuran-3,4'-piperidine),
- 30 (m) 1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3-methylbenzoyl)(methylamino))butyl)-5-fluoro-spiro(2,3-dihydrobenzofuran-3,4'-piperidine),

- 210 -

(n) 1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(benzoyl)-(methylamino))butyl)-5-fluoro-spiro(2,3-dihydrobenzofuran-3,4'-piperidine),  
5 (o) 1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(benzoyl)(methylamino))butyl)-spiro(2,3-dihydrobenzofuran-3,4'-piperidine),  
10 (p) 1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3-methylbenzoyl)(methylamino))butyl)-spiro(2,3-dihydrobenzofuran-3,4'-piperidine),  
10 (q) 1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3,5-dimethylbenzoyl)(methylamino))butyl)-spiro(2,3-dihydrobenzofuran-3,4'-piperidine),  
15 (r) 1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3-chlorobenzoyl)(methylamino))butyl)-spiro(2,3-dihydrobenzofuran-3,4'-piperidine),  
15 (s) 1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3,5-dichlorobenzoyl)(methylamino))butyl)-spiro(2,3-dihydrobenzofuran-3,4'-piperidine),  
20 (t) 1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(4-fluoro-1-naphthoyl)(methylamino))butyl)-spiro(2,3-dihydrobenzofuran-3,4'-piperidine),  
20 (u) 1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(t-butoxycarbonyl)(methylamino))butyl)-spiro(2,3-dihydrobenzothiophene-3,4'-piperidine),  
25 (v) 1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3,5-dimethylbenzoyl)(methylamino))butyl)-spiro(2,3-dihydrobenzothiophene-3,4'-piperidine),  
25 (w) 1'-(3-((S)-(4-chlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3,5-dimethylbenzoyl)(methylamino))butyl)-spiro(2,3-dihydrobenzothiophene-3,4'-piperidine),  
30 (x) 1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(t-butoxycarbonyl)(methylamino))butyl)-spiro(2,3-dihydrobenzothiophene-3,4'-piperidine)-1-oxide,

- 211 -

(y) 1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(4-fluoro-1-naphthylmethyl)(methylamino))butyl)-spiro(2,3-dihydrobenzothiophene-3,4'-piperidine)-1-oxide,

(z) 1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(t-butoxycarbonyl)(methylamino))butyl)-spiro(2,3-dihydrobenzothiophene-3,4'-piperidine)-1,1-dioxide,

(aa) 1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3,5-dimethylbenzoyl)(methylamino))butyl)-spiro(2,3-dihydrobenzothiophene-3,4'-piperidine)-1,1-dioxide,

(ab) 1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3,5-dimethylbenzoyl)(methylamino))butyl)-spiro(2,3-dihydrobenzothiophene-3,4'-piperidine)-1,1-dioxide,

(ac) 1'-(3-((S)-(4-chlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3,5-dimethylbenzoyl)(methylamino))butyl)-spiro(2,3-dihydrobenzothiophene-3,4'-piperidine)-1,1-dioxide,

(ad) 1'-(3-((S)-(4-chlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3,5-dimethylbenzoyl)(methylamino))butyl)-spiro(2,3-dihydrobenzothiophene-3,4'-piperidine)-1-oxide,

(ae) 1'-(3-((S)-(4-chlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3,5-bistrifluoromethylbenzoyl)(methylamino))butyl)-spiro(2,3-dihydrobenzothiophene-3,4'-piperidine), 1-oxide,

(af) 1'-(3-((S)-(4-chlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3,5-bistrifluoromethylbenzoyl)(methylamino))butyl)-spiro(2,3-dihydrobenzothiophene-3,4'-piperidine), 1, 1-dioxide,

(ag) 1'-benzyloxycarbonyl-5-fluoro-1-methanesulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine),

(ah) 1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(methylamino)butyl)-1-methanesulfonyl-5-methoxy-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine),

(ai) 1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(methylamino)butyl)-1-methanesulfonyl-5-methyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine), 5-chloro-1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(methylamino)butyl)-1-methanesulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine),

- 212 -

(ak) 1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(methylamino)butyl)-5-fluoro-1-methanesulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine),

5 (al) 1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(methylamino)butyl)-7-fluoro-1-methanesulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine),

(am) 1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3,5-dimethylbenzoyl)(methylamino))butyl)-1-methanesulfonyl-5-methyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine),

10 (an) 5-chloro-1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3-methylbenzoyl)(methylamino))butyl)-1-methanesulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine),

(ao) 1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3,5-dimethylbenzoyl)(methylamino))butyl)-1-methanesulfonyl-5-methoxy-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine),

15 (ap) 1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3-methylbenzoyl)(methylamino))butyl)-5-fluoro-1-methanesulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine),

(aq) 1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3,5-dichlorobenzoyl)(methylamino))butyl)-5-fluoro-1-methanesulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine),

20 (ar) 1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3,5-dimethylbenzoyl)(methylamino))butyl)-5-fluoro-1-methanesulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine),

25 (as) 1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3-chlorobenzoyl)(methylamino))butyl)-5-fluoro-1-methanesulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine),

(at) 1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3,5-bis(trifluoromethyl)benzoyl)-(methylamino))butyl)-5-fluoro-1-methanesulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine),

30 (au) 1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3,5-dimethylbenzoyl)(methylamino))butyl)-7-fluoro-1-methanesulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine),

(av) 1-acetyl-1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-t-butoxycarbonyl)(methylamino)butyl)-5-fluoro-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine),  
5 (aw) 1-acetyl-5-chloro-1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(methylamino)butyl)-spirop(indoline-3,4'-piperidine),  
(ax) 1-acetyl-1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(methylamino)butyl)-5-methyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine),  
10 (ay) 1-acetyl-1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(methylamino)butyl)-5-fluoro-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine),  
(az) 1-acetyl-1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(methylamino)butyl)-6-fluoro-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine),  
(ba) 1-acetyl-1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(methylamino)butyl)-4-fluoro-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine),  
15 (bb) 1-acetyl-1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-benzoyl)(methylamino)butyl)-4-fluoro-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine),  
(bc) 1-acetyl-1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3,5,-dimethylbenzoyl)(methylamino)butyl)-6-fluoro-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine),  
20 (bd) 1-acetyl-1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-benzoyl)(methylamino)butyl)-6-fluoro-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine),  
(be) 1-acetyl-1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3,5,-dimethylbenzoyl)(methylamino)butyl)-4-fluoro-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine),  
25 (bf) 1-acetyl-1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-benzoyl)(methylamino)butyl)-5-fluoro-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine),  
(bg) 1-acetyl-1'-5-chloro-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3,5,-dimethylbenzoyl)(methylamino)butyl)-spirop(indoline-3,4'-piperidine),  
30 (bh) 1-acetyl-1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3-chlorobenzoyl)(methylamino)butyl)-5-fluoro-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine),  
(bi) 1-acetyl-1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3,5-dichlorobenzoyl)(methylamino)butyl)-5-fluoro-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine),

- 214 -

(bj) 1-acetyl-1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3-methylbenzoyl)(methylamino))butyl)-5-fluoro-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine),  
5 (bk) 1-acetyl-1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3,5-dimethylbenzoyl)(methylamino))butyl)-5-fluoro-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine),  
10 (bl) 1-acetyl-1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3-isopropoxybenzoyl)(methylamino))butyl)-5-fluoro-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine),  
15 (bm) 1-acetyl-1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3,5-bis(trifluoromethyl)(methylamino))butyl)-5-fluoro-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine),  
20 (bn) 1-acetyl-1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3,5-dimethylbenzoyl)(methylamino))butyl)-5-methyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine),  
25 (bo) 1-acetyl-1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(4-fluoro-1-naphthoyl)(methylamino))butyl)-5-fluoro-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine),  
30 (bp) 1-acetyl-1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(1-naphthoyl)(methylamino))butyl)-5-fluoro-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine),  
(bq) 1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(1-naphthoyl)-(methylamino))butyl)-5-fluoro-1-methanesulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine),  
(br) 1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(4-fluoro-1-naphthoyl)(methylamino))butyl)-5-fluoro-1-methanesulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine),  
(bs) 1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(4-fluoro-1-naphthoyl)(methylamino))butyl)-spiro(2,3-dihydrobenzothiophene-3,4'-piperidine),  
(bt) 1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(4-fluoro-1-naphthoyl)(methylamino))butyl)-spiro(2,3-dihydrobenzothiophene-3,4'-piperidine) sulfone,

- 215 -

(bu) 1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(4-fluoro-1-napthoyl)(methylamino))butyl)-spiro(2,3-dihydrobenzothiophene-3,4'-piperidine),

5 (bv) 1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(4-fluoro-1-napthyl)(methylamino))butyl)-5-fluoro-spiro(2,3-dihydrobenzofuran-3,4'-piperidine),

(bw) 1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(4-fluoro-1-napthyl)(methylamino))butyl)-spiro(2,3-dihydrobenzofuran-3,4'-piperidine),

10 (bx) 1-acetyl-1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(4-fluoro-1-napthoyl)(methylamino))butyl)-6-fluoro-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine),

(by) 1-acetyl-1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(4-fluoro-1-napthoyl)(methylamino))butyl)-4-fluoro-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine),

15 (bz) 1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(4-fluoro-1-napthylmethyl)(methylamino))butyl)-5-fluoro-1-methanesulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine),

(ca) 1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(4-fluoro-1-napthylmethyl)(methylamino))butyl)-5-fluoro-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine),

20 (cb) 1-acetyl-1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(4-fluoro-1-napthylmethyl)(methylamino))butyl)-5-fluoro-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine),

25 (cd) 1'-(5-fluoroindolyl-3-(2-ethanoyl))-1-methanesulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine),

(ce) 1'-(2-(3-(5-fluoroindolyl)ethyl))-1-methanesulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine),

(cf) 1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3-chloro-4-fluorobenzoyl)(methylamino))butyl)-1-methanesulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine),

30 (cg) 1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3-chloro-4-fluorobenzoyl)(methylamino))butyl)-5-fluoro-1-methanesulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine),

- 216 -

(ch) 1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(4-fluorobenzoyl)(methylamino))butyl)-1-methanesulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine),  
5 (ci) 1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(4-fluorobenzoyl)(methylamino))butyl)-5-fluoro-1-acetyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine),  
10 (cj) 1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3-chloro-4-fluorobenzoyl)(methylamino))butyl)-5-fluoro-1-acetyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine),  
15 (ck) 1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(4-fluoro-3,5-dimethylbenzoyl)(methylamino))butyl)-5-fluoro-1-acetyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine),  
20 (cl) 1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(4-fluoro-3,5-dimethylbenzoyl)(methylamino))butyl)-1-methanesulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine),  
25 (cm) 1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(4-fluoro-3-trifluoromethylbenzoyl)(methylamino))butyl)-1-methanesulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine),  
30 (cn) 1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(4-fluoro-3,5-dimethylbenzoyl)(methylamino))butyl)-1-acetyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine),  
(co) 1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(4-fluoro-3-trifluoromethylbenzoyl)(methylamino))butyl)-1-acetyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine),  
(cp) 1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(4-fluoro-1-naphthoyl)(methylamino))butyl)-1-acetyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine),  
35 (cq) 1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(4-fluoro-1-naphthoyl)(methylamino))butyl)-1-methanesulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine),  
(cr) 1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(1-naphthoyl)(methylamino))butyl)-1-acetyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine),

- 217 -

(cs) 1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3,5-dimethylbenzoyl)(methylamino))-4-phenyl-butyl)-1-methanesulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine),  
5 (ct) 1'-(4-(N-(3,5-dimethylbenzoyl)(methylamino))-4-(phenyl)butyl)-1-acetyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine),  
(cu) 1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(1-(2-phenylimidazolo))butyl)-1-methanesulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine),  
10 (cv) 1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(3,5-dimethylbenzoyl)(methylamino))-4-(methyl)butyl)-1-acetyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine),  
(cw) 1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(N-(4-fluoro-1-naphthyl)(methylamino))-4-(methyl)butyl)-1-acetyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine),  
15 (cx) 1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(R and S)-(N-(3,5-dimethylbenzoyl)(methylamino))hexyl)-1-acetyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine),  
(cy) 1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(R and S)-(N-(3,5-dimethylbenzoyl)(methylamino))hexyl)-1-acetyl-5-fluoro-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine),  
20 (cz) 1'-(3-(S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl)-4-(R and S)-(N-(3,5-dimethylbenzoyl)(methylamino))heptyl)-1-acetyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine),  
(da) 1'-(3-(S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl)-4-(R and S)-(N-(3,5-dimethylbenzoyl)(methylamino))heptyl)-1-acetyl-5-fluoro-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine),  
25 (db) 1'-(3-((S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(R and S)-hydroxy-5-(3,5-dimethylphenyl)pentyl)-1-methanesulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine),  
(dc) 1'-(3-(R)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl)-5-(N-(3,5-dimethylphenyl)(methylamino))-5-oxo-pentyl)-1-methanesulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine),  
30

- 218 -

(dd) 1'-(3-(R)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-5-(3,5-dimethylphenyl)-5-oxo-pentyl)-1-methanesulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine),

5 (de) 1'-(3-(R)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-6-(3,5-dimethylphenyl)-5-oxo-hexyl)-1-methanesulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine),

(df) 1'-(3-(S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-6-(3,5-dimethylphenyl)-6-oxo-hexyl)-1-methanesulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine), and

10 (dg) 1'-(3-(S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-6-(3,5-dimethylphenyl)-5-(R&S)-methyl-6-oxo-hexyl)-1-methanesulfonyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine).

(dh) 1'-(3-(S)-(3,4-dichlorophenyl))-4-(3,5-(bistrifluoromethyl)benzyloxy)-1-acetyl-spiro(indoline-3,4'-piperidine)

15 15. A pharmaceutical composition for antagonizing the effect of substance P in a patient in need of such treatment comprising a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier and a non-toxic therapeutically effective amount of the compound of Claim 1.

20 16. A pharmaceutical composition for the antagonizing the effect of neurokinin A, in a patient in need of such treatment comprising a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier and a non-toxic therapeutically effective amount of the compound of Claim 1.

25 17. A method for antagonizing the effect of substance P in a patient in need of such antagonizing which comprises the administration to the patient of a non-toxic therapeutically effective amount of the compound according to Claim 1.

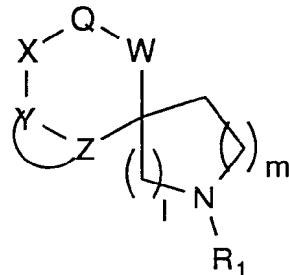
30 18. A method for antagonizing the effect of neurokinin A in a patient in need of such antagonizing which comprises the administration to the patient of a non-toxic therapeutically effective amount of the compound according to Claim 1.

- 219 -

19. A method of treating or preventing asthma in a patient in need thereof which comprises the administration to the patient of a non-toxic therapeutically effective amount of the compound of Claim 1.

5

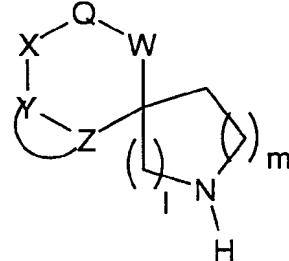
20. A process of making compounds of formula I according to Claims 1 to 14



comprising the steps of:

(a) reacting a compound of formula A

20



A

in a suitable solvent with a compound of formula R<sub>1</sub>-X<sub>1</sub> wherein X<sub>1</sub> is  
 30 a leaving group optionally in the presence of a suitable base such as trialkylamine; or

(b) reacting a compound of formula A in a second suitable solvent with a compound of the formula R-CH(O), wherein R-CH<sub>2</sub> is R<sub>1</sub> as defined above, in the presence of a reducing agent; or

- 220 -

(c) reacting a compound of formula A in a halocarbon solvent with a compound of the formula R-C(O)X<sub>2</sub> wherein X<sub>2</sub> is a suitable leaving group such as bromo or chloro in the presence of a suitable base;  
5 to yield a compound of formula I.

10

15

20

25

30

# INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International Application No  
PCT/US 94/05545

## A. CLASSIFICATION OF SUBJECT MATTER

IPC 5 C07D471/10 C07D495/10 A61K31/435 C07D491/10 C07D513/10  
 A61K31/54 C07D487/10 A61K31/40 A61K31/425 C07D471/20  
 C07D513/20 C07D491/20 C07D495/20 //C07D471/10,221:00,

According to International Patent Classification (IPC) or to both national classification and IPC

## B. FIELDS SEARCHED

Minimum documentation searched (classification system followed by classification symbols)  
IPC 5 C07D A61K

Documentation searched other than minimum documentation to the extent that such documents are included in the fields searched

Electronic data base consulted during the international search (name of data base and, where practical, search terms used)

## C. DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT

Category *	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
A	EP,A,0 360 390 (GLAXO) 28 March 1990 see claims 1,12 ---	1,15
X	US,A,3 301 857 (L. BERGER ET AL.) 31 January 1967 see column 1, line 16 - line 33 ---	1
X	EP,A,0 431 943 (MERCK) 12 June 1991 see page 1414, line 21 - line 31 ---	1
X	EP,A,0 518 805 (LUNDBECK) 16 December 1992 see page 20, line 51 - line 52 ---	1
		-/-

Further documents are listed in the continuation of box C.

Patent family members are listed in annex.

### \* Special categories of cited documents :

- "A" document defining the general state of the art which is not considered to be of particular relevance
- "E" earlier document but published on or after the international filing date
- "L" document which may throw doubts on priority claim(s) or which is cited to establish the publication date of another citation or other special reason (as specified)
- "O" document referring to an oral disclosure, use, exhibition or other means
- "P" document published prior to the international filing date but later than the priority date claimed

- "T" later document published after the international filing date or priority date and not in conflict with the application but cited to understand the principle or theory underlying the invention
- "X" document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered novel or cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is taken alone
- "Y" document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is combined with one or more other such documents, such combination being obvious to a person skilled in the art.
- "&" document member of the same patent family

Date of the actual completion of the international search

2 November 1994

Date of mailing of the international search report

- 9. 11. 94

Name and mailing address of the ISA

European Patent Office, P.B. 5818 Patentlaan 2  
NL - 2280 HV Rijswijk  
Tel. (+31-70) 340-2040, Tx. 31 651 epo nl,  
Fax: (+31-70) 340-3016

Authorized officer

Alfaro Faus, I

## INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International Application No  
PCT/US 94/05545

A. CLASSIFICATION OF SUBJECT MATTER  
 IPC 5 209:00), (C07D471/10, 221:00, 221:00), (C07D495/10, 333:00, 221:00),  
 (C07D491/10, 307:00, 221:00)

According to International Patent Classification (IPC) or to both national classification and IPC

## B. FIELDS SEARCHED

Minimum documentation searched (classification system followed by classification symbols)

Documentation searched other than minimum documentation to the extent that such documents are included in the fields searched

Electronic data base consulted during the international search (name of data base and, where practical, search terms used)

## C. DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT

Category *	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
X	CHEMICAL ABSTRACTS, vol. 110, no. 21, 1989, Columbus, Ohio, US; abstract no. 193172d, S. MISZTAL ET AL. 'Synthesis of 1-spiropiperidino-1,2,3,4-tetrahydro-beta-carbolines and their transformation into new systems' page 786 ; see abstract & F.E.C.S. INT. CONF. CHEM. BIOTECHNOL. BIOL. ACT. NAT. PROD., [PROC.], 3RD 1985 (PUB. 1987) 4, 145-7 --- JOURNAL OF HETEROCYCLIC CHEMISTRY, vol. 18, 1981, PROVO US pages 815 - 820 H.H. ONG ET AL. 'Novel tetracyclic spiropiperidines' see table 3, compounds 7a - 7d and 9a - 9c --- -/--	1
X		1

 Further documents are listed in the continuation of box C. Patent family members are listed in annex.

## \* Special categories of cited documents :

- "A" document defining the general state of the art which is not considered to be of particular relevance
- "E" earlier document but published on or after the international filing date
- "L" document which may throw doubts on priority claim(s) or which is cited to establish the publication date of another citation or other special reason (as specified)
- "O" document referring to an oral disclosure, use, exhibition or other means
- "P" document published prior to the international filing date but later than the priority date claimed

- "T" later document published after the international filing date or priority date and not in conflict with the application but cited to understand the principle or theory underlying the invention
- "X" document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered novel or cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is taken alone
- "Y" document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is combined with one or more other such documents, such combination being obvious to a person skilled in the art.
- "&" document member of the same patent family

Date of the actual completion of the international search

Date of mailing of the international search report

2 November 1994

Name and mailing address of the ISA  
 European Patent Office, P.B. 5818 Patentlaan 2  
 NL - 2280 HV Rijswijk  
 Tel. (+31-70) 340-2040, Tx. 31 651 epo nl,  
 Fax (+31-70) 340-3016

Authorized officer

Alfaro Faus, I

## INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International Application No  
PCT/US 94/05545

## C.(Continuation) DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT

Category	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
X	CHEMICAL ABSTRACTS, vol. 90, no. 17, 1979, Columbus, Ohio, US; abstract no. 137699n, HOECHST 'Spiro[indoline-3,4-piperidine] compounds' page 503 ; see abstract & JP,A,78 132 578 (HOECHST) 18 November 1978 ---	1
X	US,A,4 233 307 (K. ONO ET AL) 11 November 1980 see claim 1 ---	1
X	EP,A,0 450 761 (MERCK) 9 October 1991 see claim 1 -----	1

## INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International application No.

PCT/US 94/05545

## Box I Observations where certain claims were found unsearchable (Continuation of item 1 of first sheet)

This international search report has not been established in respect of certain claims under Article 17(2)(a) for the following reasons:

1.  Claims Nos.: because they relate to subject matter not required to be searched by this Authority, namely:  
Although claims 17-19 are directed to a method of treatment of (diagnostic method practised on) the human/animal body, the search has been carried out and based on the alleged effects of the compound/composition.
2.  Claims Nos.: because they relate to parts of the international application that do not comply with the prescribed requirements to such an extent that no meaningful international search can be carried out, specifically:  
On grounds of Articles 6 and 17.2a(ii) of the PCT (conciseness of claims) and of the Guidelines for Examination in the EPO, Part B, Chapter III, 2.2 (economic reasons) the search has been based on the examples disclosed in the description.
3.  Claims Nos.: because they are dependent claims and are not drafted in accordance with the second and third sentences of Rule 6.4(a).

## Box II Observations where unity of invention is lacking (Continuation of item 2 of first sheet)

This International Searching Authority found multiple inventions in this international application, as follows:

1.  As all required additional search fees were timely paid by the applicant, this international search report covers all searchable claims.
2.  As all searchable claims could be searched without effort justifying an additional fee, this Authority did not invite payment of any additional fee.
3.  As only some of the required additional search fees were timely paid by the applicant, this international search report covers only those claims for which fees were paid, specifically claims Nos.:
4.  No required additional search fees were timely paid by the applicant. Consequently, this international search report is restricted to the invention first mentioned in the claims; it is covered by claims Nos.:

## Remark on Protest

The additional search fees were accompanied by the applicant's protest.

No protest accompanied the payment of additional search fees.

**INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT**

Information on patent family members

Inter	nal Application No
PCT/US 94/05545	

Patent document cited in search report	Publication date	Patent family member(s)		Publication date
EP-A-0360390	28-03-90	JP-A- US-A-	2124887 5166136	14-05-90 24-11-92
<b>US-A-3301857</b>		NONE		
EP-A-0431943	12-06-91	AU-B- AU-A- CA-A- CN-A- JP-A- NZ-A- US-A-	6329794 6787390 2031633 1053613 4217960 236315 5206240	21-07-94 13-06-91 09-06-91 07-08-91 07-08-92 27-09-94 27-04-93
EP-A-0518805	16-12-92	AU-A- CZ-A- WO-A- EP-A- JP-T-	1984892 9302726 9222554 0593511 6508360	12-01-93 13-04-94 23-12-92 27-04-94 22-09-94
<b>JP-A-78132578</b>		NONE		
US-A-4233307	11-11-80	JP-A- AT-B- AU-B- AU-A- BE-A- CA-A- CH-A- DE-A- FR-A, B NL-A- SE-A-	54109983 356108 511735 3616978 867517 1092106 635841 2822227 2442845 7805814 7805949	29-08-79 10-04-80 04-09-80 22-11-79 18-09-78 23-12-80 29-04-83 16-08-79 27-06-80 15-08-79 14-08-79
EP-A-0450761	09-10-91	JP-A- US-A-	4211655 5091387	03-08-92 25-02-92